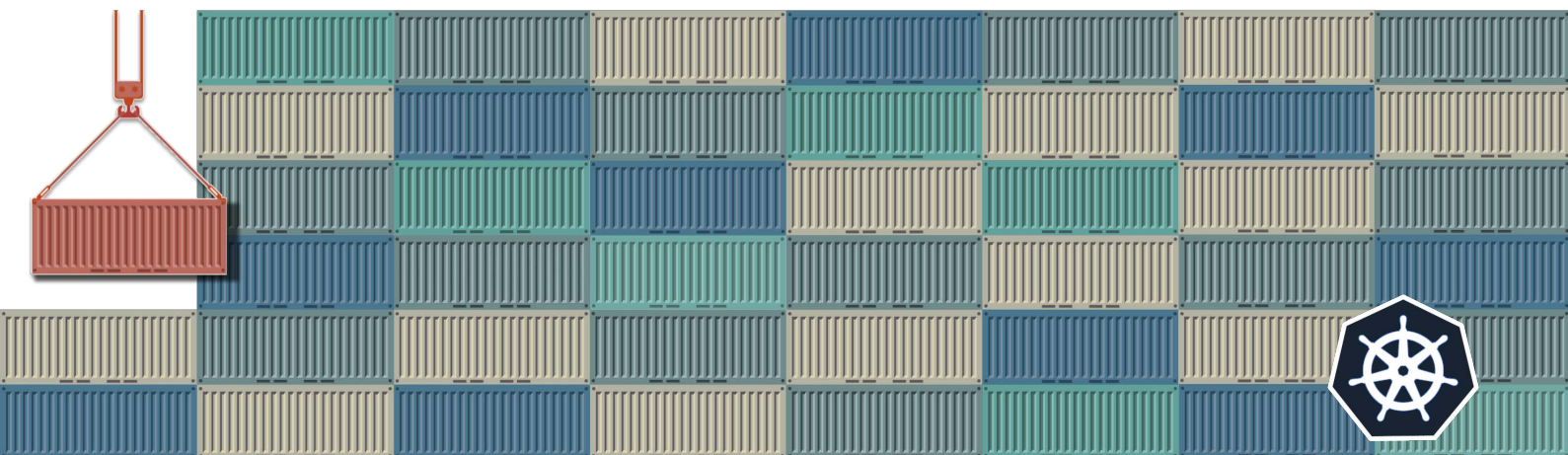


# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes



## Manual Set

### Getting Started

[Release Notes >](#)

[Overview >](#)

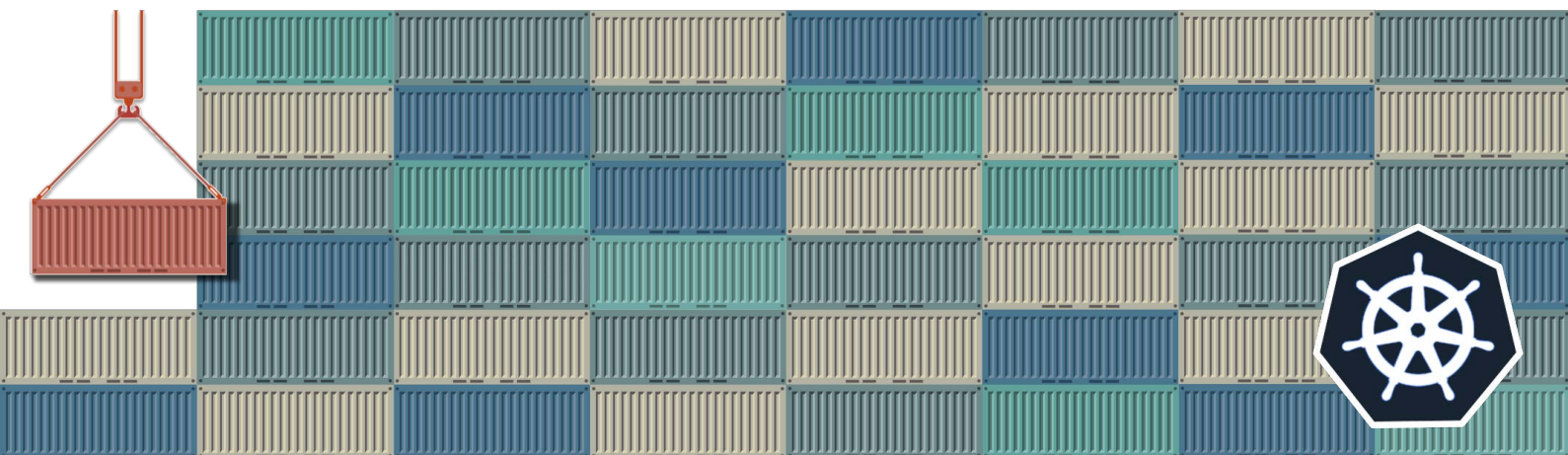
[Quick Start Guide >](#)

### Reference

[User's Guide >](#)

[Reference >](#)

# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes



## Release Notes

Linux

J2UL-RN13-10ENZO(00)

October 2022

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document provides release information for FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 New Features and Improvements](#)

Explains the new features and improvements in this version.

## Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manual:

Full Name	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes	FEP or FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres	
Custom Resource	CR
Universal Base Image	UBI
OpenShift Container Platform	OCP
Mutual TLS	MTLS

## Abbreviations of manual titles

The following abbreviations are used in this manual as manual titles:

Full Manual Title	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes Release Notes	Release Notes
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes Overview	Overview
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes User's Guide	User's Guide
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes Reference	Reference

## Trademarks

- Linux is a registered trademark or trademark of Mr. Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.
- Red Hat and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- S/390 is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States or other countries or both.

Other product and company names mentioned in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Export restrictions

If this document is to be exported or provided overseas, confirm legal requirements for the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act as well as other laws and regulations, including U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and follow the required procedures.

## Issue date and version

Edition 10.0: October 2022
Edition 9.0: September 2022
Edition 8.0: August 2022
Edition 7.0: July 2022
Edition 6.0: June 2022
Edition 5.0: May 2022
Edition 4.0: March 2022
Edition 3.0: December 2021
Edition 2.0: October 2021
Edition 1.0: September 2021

## Copyright

Copyright 2021-2022 FUJITSU LIMITED

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 New Features and Improvements.....	1
1.1 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.8.....	2
1.1.1 OSS.....	2
1.1.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase.....	2
1.1.2 Platform Enhancement.....	2
1.1.2.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image.....	2
1.2 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.7.....	2
1.2.1 OSS.....	2
1.2.1.1 Patching the PostgreSQL JDBC Driver.....	2
1.2.2 Platform Enhancement.....	2
1.2.2.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image.....	2
1.3 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.6.....	2
1.3.1 Platform Enhancement.....	3
1.3.1.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image.....	3
1.4 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.5.....	3
1.4.1 Platform Enhancement.....	3
1.4.1.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image.....	3
1.5 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.4.....	3
1.5.1 OSS.....	3
1.5.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase.....	3
1.5.2 Platform Enhancement.....	3
1.5.2.1 Additional OCP Support.....	3
1.6 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.3.....	4
1.6.1 Platform Enhancement.....	4
1.6.1.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image.....	4
1.7 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.2.....	4
1.7.1 OSS.....	4
1.7.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase.....	4
1.7.2 Platform Enhancement.....	4
1.7.2.1 Additional OCP Support.....	4
1.7.2.2 Additional OCS Support.....	4
1.8 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.1.....	5
1.8.1 OSS.....	5
1.8.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase.....	5
1.8.2 Platform Enhancement.....	5
1.8.2.1 Additional OCP Support.....	5
1.9 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.0.....	5
1.9.1 OSS.....	5
1.9.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase.....	5
1.9.2 Platform Enhancement.....	5
1.9.2.1 Additional OCP Support.....	6
1.9.2.2 Additional OCS Support.....	6
1.9.3 Operation.....	6
1.9.3.1 OCP Level4 for Monitoring and Alerting Feature.....	6
1.9.3.2 OCP Level4 for Event Notification Feature.....	6
1.9.3.3 OCP Level5 for Auto Scaling Read Replicas.....	6
1.9.3.4 Logical Replication Support.....	7
1.10 Additional Notes.....	7

# Chapter 1 New Features and Improvements

This chapter explains FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes new features and improvements added in this version.

Table 1.1 New features and improvements

Version and level	Classification	Feature
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.8  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.8	OSS	<a href="#">PostgreSQL Rebase</a>
	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Patching the Container's Base OS Image</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.7  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.7	OSS	<a href="#">Patching the PostgreSQL JDBC Driver</a>
	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Patching the Container's Base OS Image</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.6  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.6	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Patching the Container's Base OS Image</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.5  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.5	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Patching the Container's Base OS Image</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.4  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.4	OSS	<a href="#">PostgreSQL Rebase</a>
	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Additional OCP Support</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.3  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.3	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Patching the Container's Base OS Image</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.2  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.2	OSS	<a href="#">PostgreSQL Rebase</a>
	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Additional OCP Support</a>
		<a href="#">Additional OCS Support</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.1  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.1	OSS	<a href="#">PostgreSQL Rebase</a>
	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Additional OCP Support</a>
FEP 13 Operator image tag:v3.1.0  Container image tag:ubi8-13-1.0	OSS	<a href="#">PostgreSQL Rebase</a>
	Platform enhancement	<a href="#">Additional OCP Support</a>
		<a href="#">Additional OCS Support</a>
	Operation	<a href="#">OCP Level4 for Monitoring and Alerting Feature</a>
		<a href="#">OCP Level4 for Event Notification Feature</a>
		<a href="#">OCP Level5 for Auto Scaling Read Replicas</a>
		<a href="#">Logical Replication Support</a>

## 1.1 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.8

---

This section explains the improvement in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.8.

### 1.1.1 OSS

---

This section explains the improvement related to OSS:

- PostgreSQL rebase

#### 1.1.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase

The PostgreSQL version that FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres is based on is 13.8.



See

.....  
Refer to "A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes" in the Overview.  
.....

### 1.1.2 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the improvement related to platform enhancement:

- Patching the Container's Base OS image

#### 1.1.2.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image

Patched the Container's Base OS image.

## 1.2 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.7

---

This section explains the improvement in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.7.

### 1.2.1 OSS

---

This section explains the improvement related to OSS:

- Patching the PostgreSQL JDBC driver

#### 1.2.1.1 Patching the PostgreSQL JDBC Driver

Patched the PostgreSQL JDBC driver.

### 1.2.2 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the improvement related to platform enhancement:

- Patching the Container's Base OS image

#### 1.2.2.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image

Patched the Container's Base OS image.

## 1.3 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.6

---

This section explains the improvement in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.6.

## 1.3.1 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the improvement related to platform enhancement:

- Patching the Container's Base OS image

### 1.3.1.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image

Patched the Container's Base OS image.

## 1.4 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.5

---

This section explains the improvement in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.5.

### 1.4.1 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the improvement related to platform enhancement:

- Patching the Container's Base OS image

#### 1.4.1.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image

Patched the Container's Base OS image.

## 1.5 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.4

---

This section explains new features and improvements in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.4.

### 1.5.1 OSS

---

This section explains the new feature related to OSS:

- PostgreSQL rebase

#### 1.5.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase

The PostgreSQL version that FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres is based on is 13.7.



See

.....  
Refer to "A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes" in the Overview.  
.....

### 1.5.2 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the new features related to platform enhancement:

- Additional OCP support

#### 1.5.2.1 Additional OCP Support

The following additional OCP is supported:

- OCP 4.10



See

.....  
Refer to "Supported Platform" in the User's Guide for details.  
.....



## 1.6 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.3

---

This section explains the improvement in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.3.

### 1.6.1 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the improvement related to platform enhancement:

- Patching the Container's Base OS image

#### 1.6.1.1 Patching the Container's Base OS Image

Patched the Container's Base OS image.

## 1.7 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.2

---

This section explains new features and improvements in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.2.

### 1.7.1 OSS

---

This section explains the new feature related to OSS:

- PostgreSQL rebase

#### 1.7.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase

The PostgreSQL version that FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres is based on is 13.6.



See

.....  
Refer to "A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes" in the Overview.  
.....

### 1.7.2 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the new features related to platform enhancement:

- Additional OCP support

#### 1.7.2.1 Additional OCP Support

The following additional OCP is supported:

- OCP 4.9



See

.....  
Refer to "Supported Platform" in the User's Guide for details.  
.....

#### 1.7.2.2 Additional OCS Support

The following additional OCS is supported:

- OCS 4.8



See

.....  
Refer to "Supported Platform" in the User's Guide for details.  
.....

## 1.8 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.1

---

This section explains new features and improvements in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.1.

### 1.8.1 OSS

---

This section explains the new feature related to OSS:

- PostgreSQL rebase

#### 1.8.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase

The PostgreSQL version that FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres is based on is 13.5.



See

.....  
Refer to "A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes" in the Overview.  
.....

### 1.8.2 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the new features related to platform enhancement:

- Additional OCP support

#### 1.8.2.1 Additional OCP Support

The following additional OCP is supported:

- OCP 4.8



See

.....  
Refer to "Supported Platform" in the User's Guide for details.  
.....

## 1.9 Features Added FEP13 Operator in v3.1.0

---

This section explains new features and improvements in FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes v3.1.0.

### 1.9.1 OSS

---

This section explains the new feature related to OSS:

- PostgreSQL rebase

#### 1.9.1.1 PostgreSQL Rebase

The PostgreSQL version that FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres is based on is 13.3.



See

.....  
Refer to "A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes" in the Overview.  
.....

### 1.9.2 Platform Enhancement

---

This section explains the new features related to platform enhancement:

- Additional OCP support

- Additional OCS support

### 1.9.2.1 Additional OCP Support

The following additional OCP is supported:

- OCP 4.7



Refer to "Supported Platform" in the User's Guide for details.

### 1.9.2.2 Additional OCS Support

Supports OpenShift Container Storage for storage.



Refer to "Supported Platform" in the User's Guide for details.

## 1.9.3 Operation

---

This section explains the new feature related to operation:

- OCP Level4 for Monitoring and Alerting feature
- OCP Level4 for Event Notification feature
- OCP Level5 for Auto Scaling Read Replicas
- Logical Replication support

### 1.9.3.1 OCP Level4 for Monitoring and Alerting Feature

Provides operator and operand (i.e. FEPCluster) monitoring and alerting as required for OCP Level 4 functionality.



Refer to "Monitoring" in the User's Guide for details.

### 1.9.3.2 OCP Level4 for Event Notification Feature

Provides notification of custom resource creation event as required for OCP Level 4 functionality.



Refer to "Event Notification" in the User's Guide for details.

### 1.9.3.3 OCP Level5 for Auto Scaling Read Replicas

Provides the auto-scale-out capability of read replicas required for OCP level 5 functionality.



Refer to "Scaling Replicas" in the User's Guide for details.

### 1.9.3.4 Logical Replication Support

New support for logical replication as a replication method.



See

Refer to "Replication slots" in the User's Guide for details.

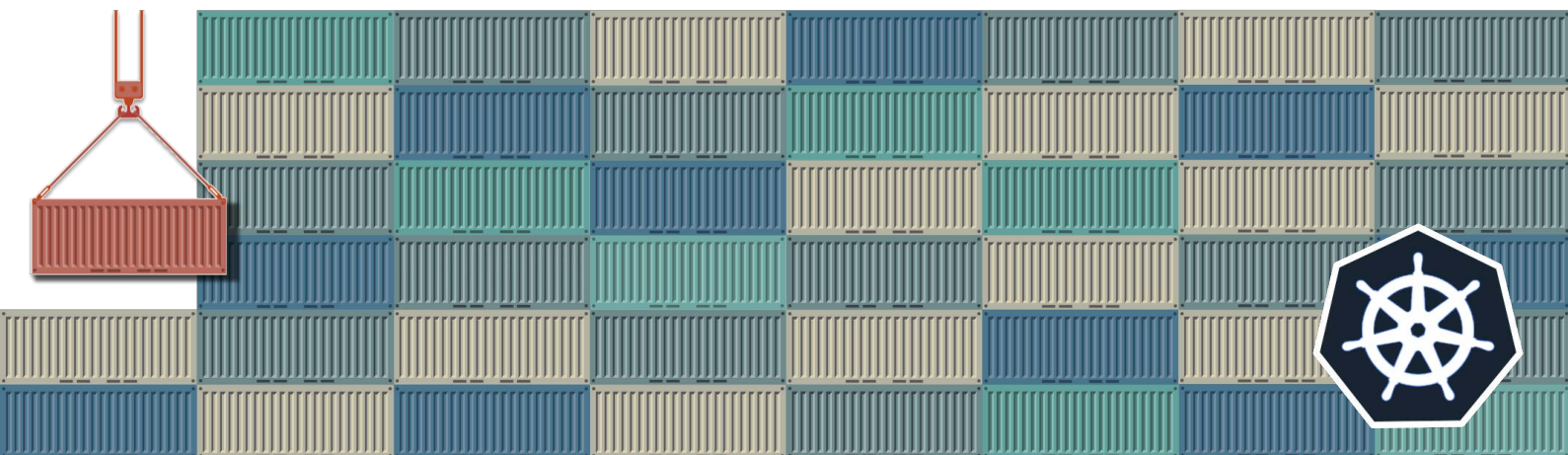
## 1.10 Additional Notes

---

Please note the following:

- There is a change in the default value.
  - Exclude pgaudit and vci from 'shared\_preload\_libraries'
  - Set the default backup retention date (7 days)
  - Enable SSL parameters for PGPool2 by default

# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes



## Quick Start Guide

## 1. Prerequisites

- Registered OpenShift cluster with Red Hat Marketplace  
cf. <https://marketplace.redhat.com/en-us/documentation/clusters#register-openshift-cluster-with-red-hat-marketplace>
- Buy or try the product 'FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes' from Red Hat Marketplace  
cf. <https://marketplace.redhat.com/en-us/documentation/operators>

## 2. system requirements

### 2.1. CPU

It should be noted that it provides supports to both the following CPU Architectures to meet the scope of work.

No	CPU architecture
1	x86
2	s390x

### 2.2. Supported Platform

It supports running on the following platforms.

No	Platform	Version
1	OpenShift Container Platform	4.10, 4.11, 4.12

## 3. Operator installation from Red Hat Marketplace

1. For information on registering your cluster and creating a namespace, see [Red Hat Marketplace Docs](#). This must be done prior to operator install.
2. On the main menu, click **Workspace**, click **Software**, click on the **product box** of 'FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes', and then click Install Operator.
3. On the *Update Channel section*, select an option.
4. On the *Approval Strategy section*, select either *Automatic* or *Manual*. The approval strategy corresponds to how you want to process operator upgrades.
5. On the *Target Cluster section*:
  - Click the checkbox next to the clusters where you want to install the Operator.

- For each cluster you selected, under **Namespace Scope**, on the **Select Scope** list, select an option.
6. Click **Install**. It may take several minutes for installation to complete.
  7. Once installation is complete, the status will change from **installing** to **Up to date**.
  8. For further information, see the [Red Hat Marketplace Operator documentation](#)

## Install Operator

**Update channel**

Operators are organized into packages and streams of updates called "channels". If an operator is available through multiple channels, you can choose which one you want to subscribe to. [Learn more](#)

stable

**Approval strategy**

Automatic updates keep the operator and any instances on the cluster up to date. Manual updates require approval and are done via OpenShift console or CLI. [Learn more](#)

Automatic  
 Manual

**Target clusters**

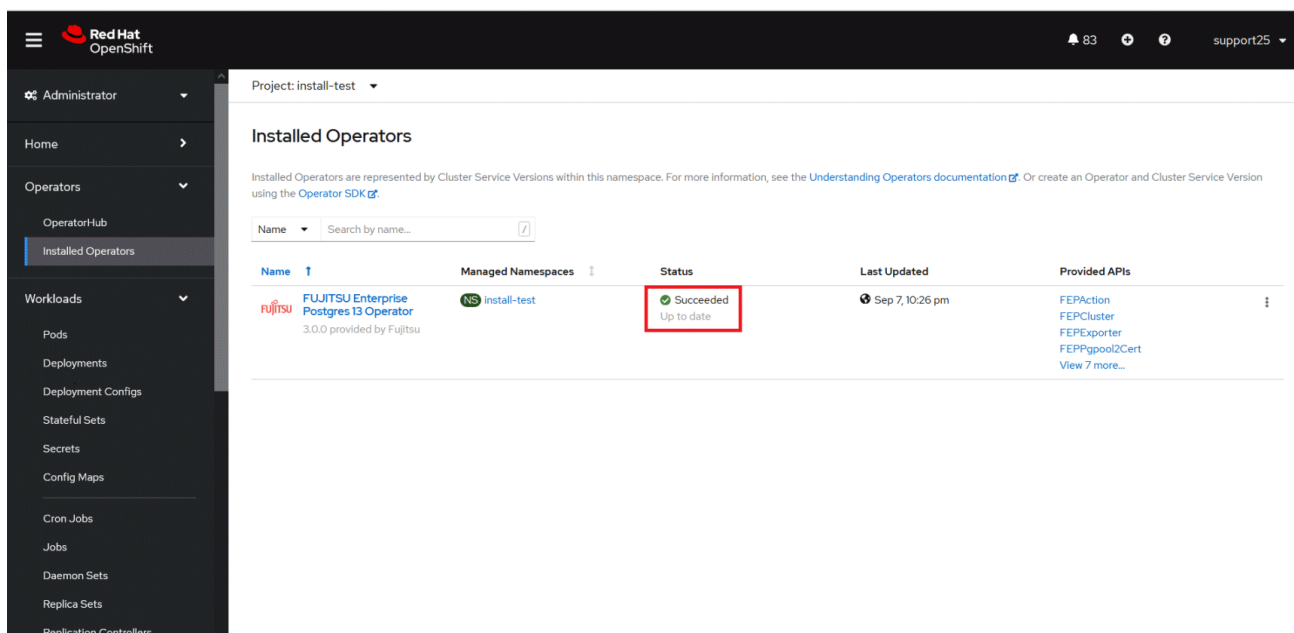
Choose clusters where you want to install and manage this operator. Then select the Namespace scope for each cluster you are installing into. [Learn more](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Platform	Namespace Scope
<input type="checkbox"/>	rj-rhm-amy-test	IBM Cloud	Select Scope <span>▼</span>

[Cancel](#)

## 4. Verification of operator installation

1. Once status changes to Up to date, click the vertical ellipsis and select Cluster Console.
2. Open the cluster where you installed the product
3. Go to **Operators > Installed Operators**
4. Select the Namespace or Project you installed on
5. Verify status for product is **Succeeded**

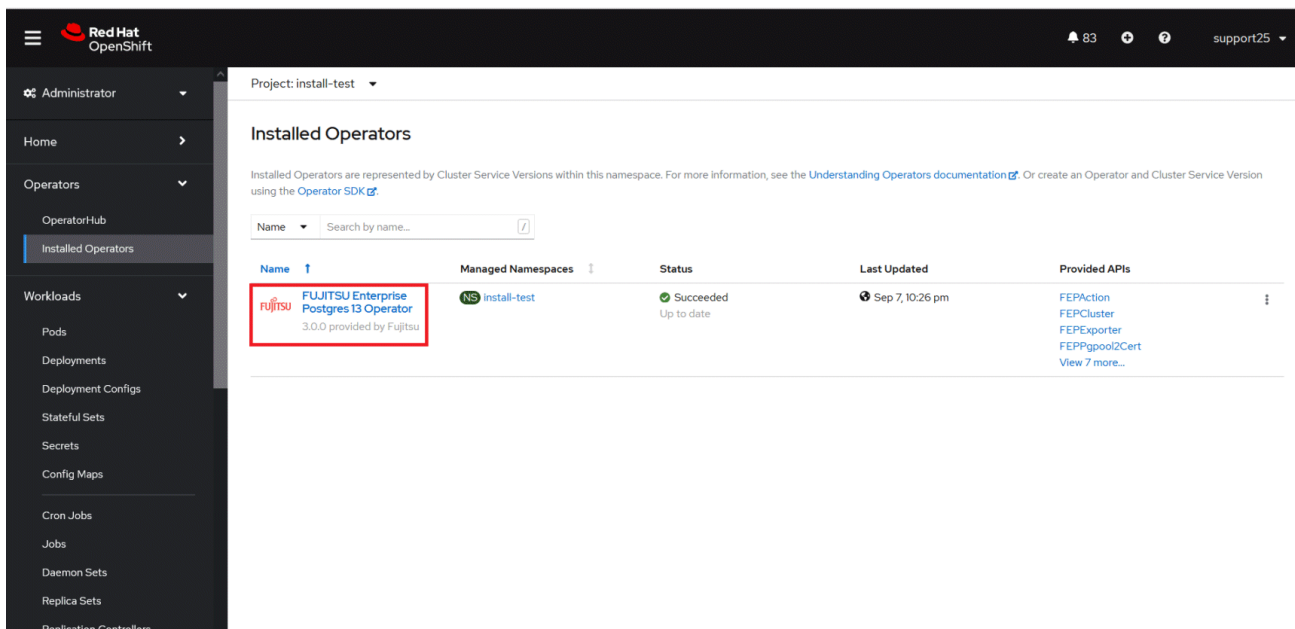


Installed operators status changes to "Succeeded"

## 5. Deploying FEPCluster using Operator

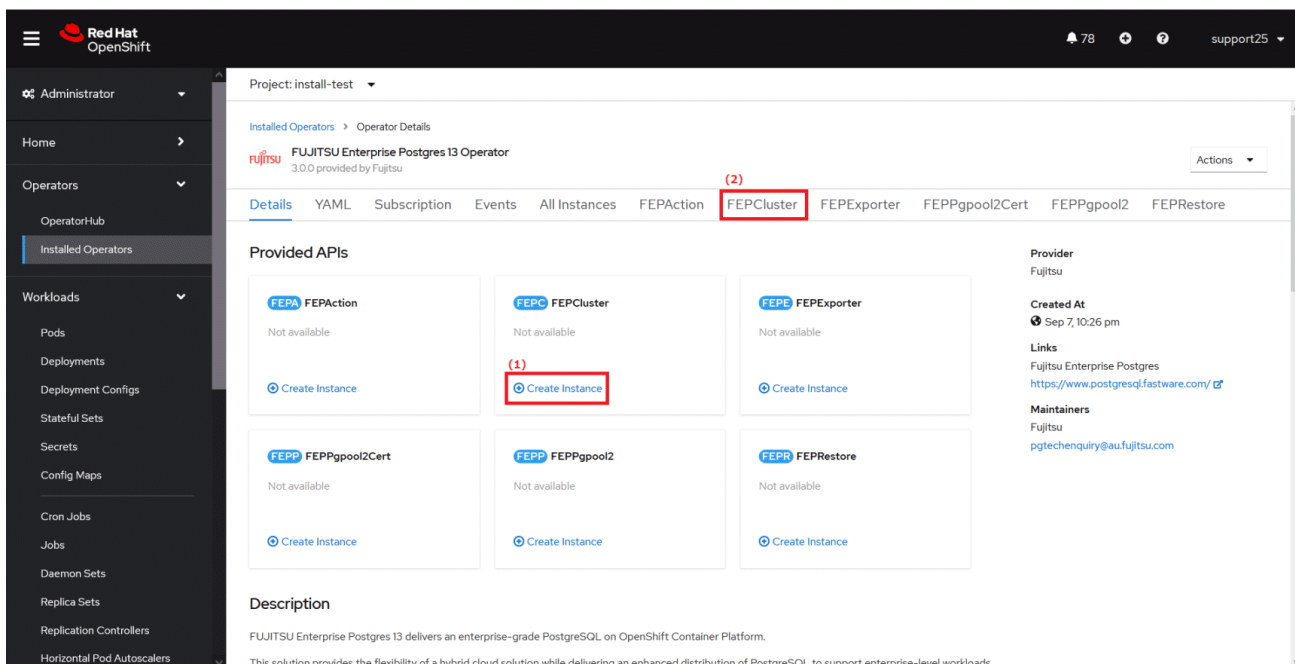
To deploy a FEPCluster in given namespace, follow these steps:

1. Under "Operators" menu item, click on "Installed Operators". You would see the installed FEP operator. Click on the name of operator.



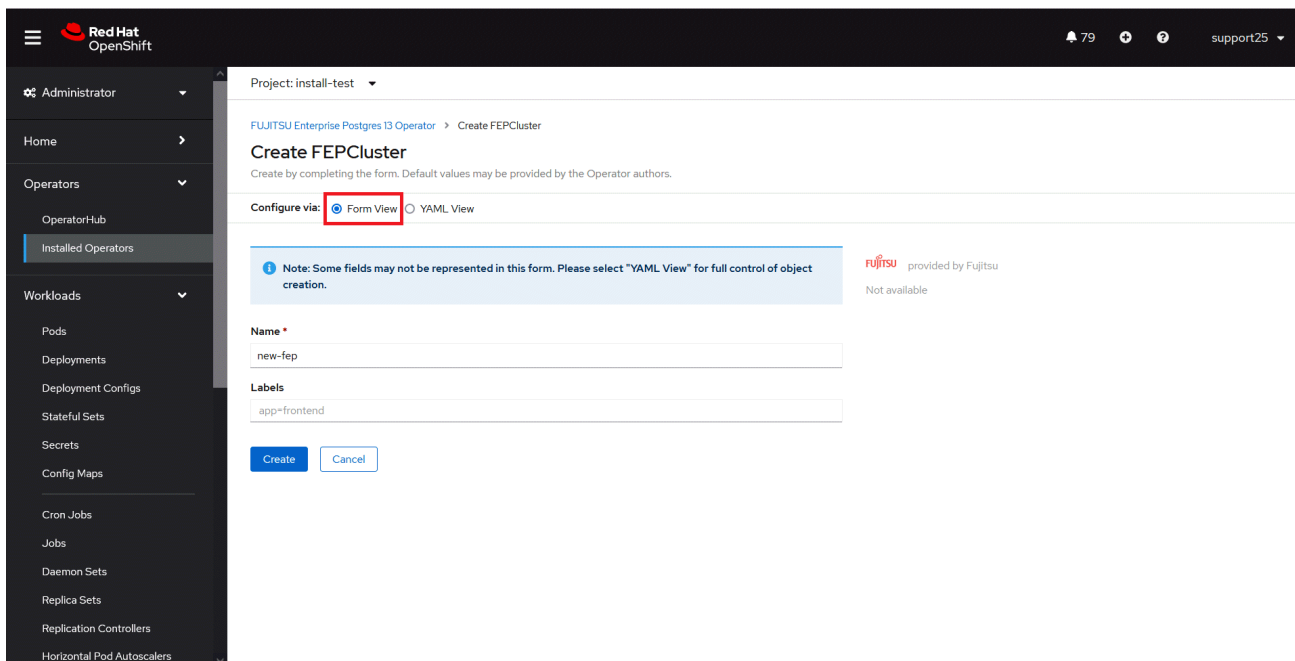
2. It will display a page with all CRs this operator supports. FEPCluster is the main CR and all others are child CR. We would create main CR and all other CRs will be created automatically by Operator. To create Cluster CR, either
  - (1) Click on "Create Instance" under FEPCluster.OR
  - (2) Click on "FEPCluster" on top and then click on "Create FEPCluster" on next page.



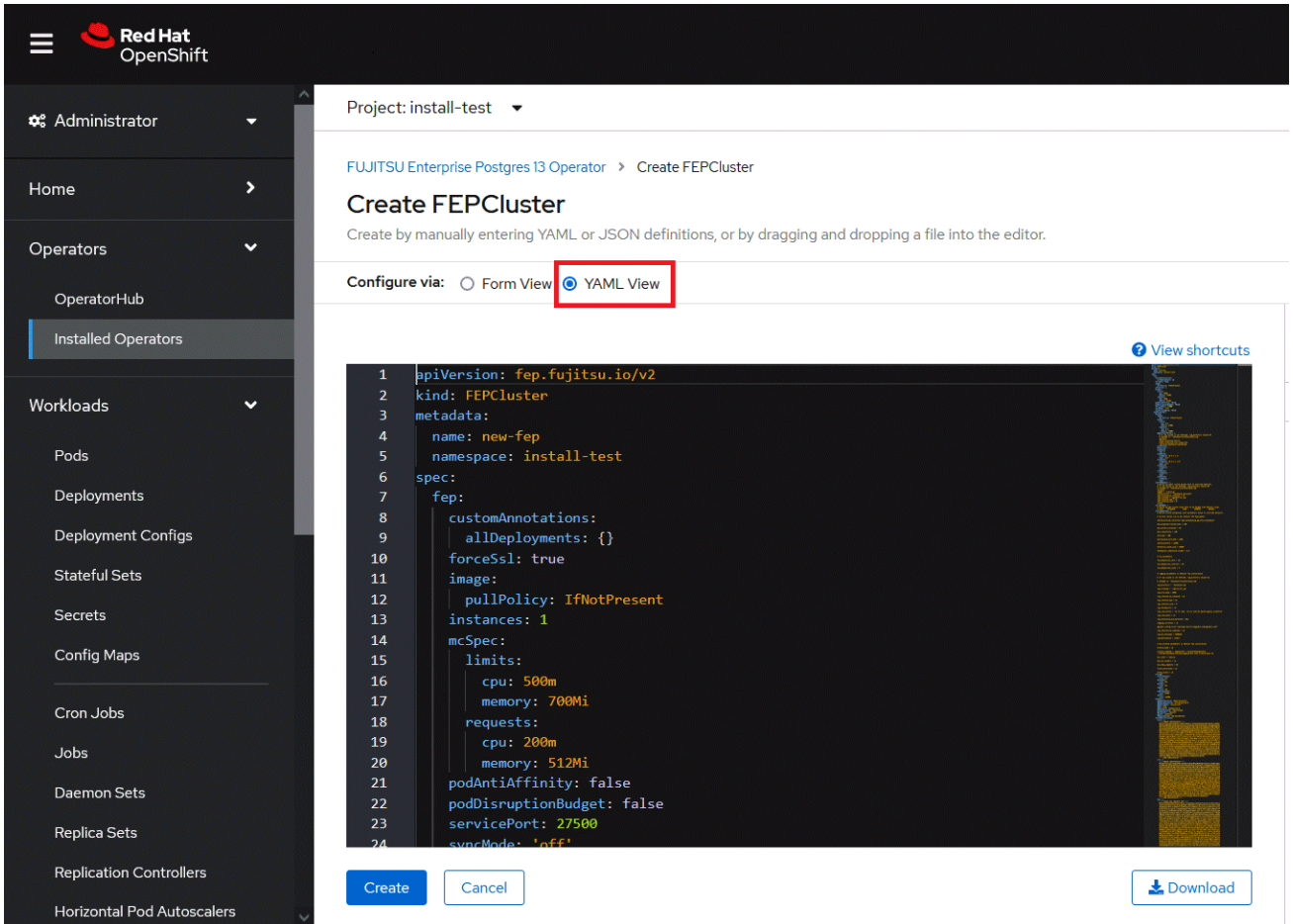


- This will bring to "Create FEPCluster" page. Here you have two options to configure. The first one is Form View. At the moment, in Form View, one can change only the name of cluster being deployed. Default name is "new-fep".

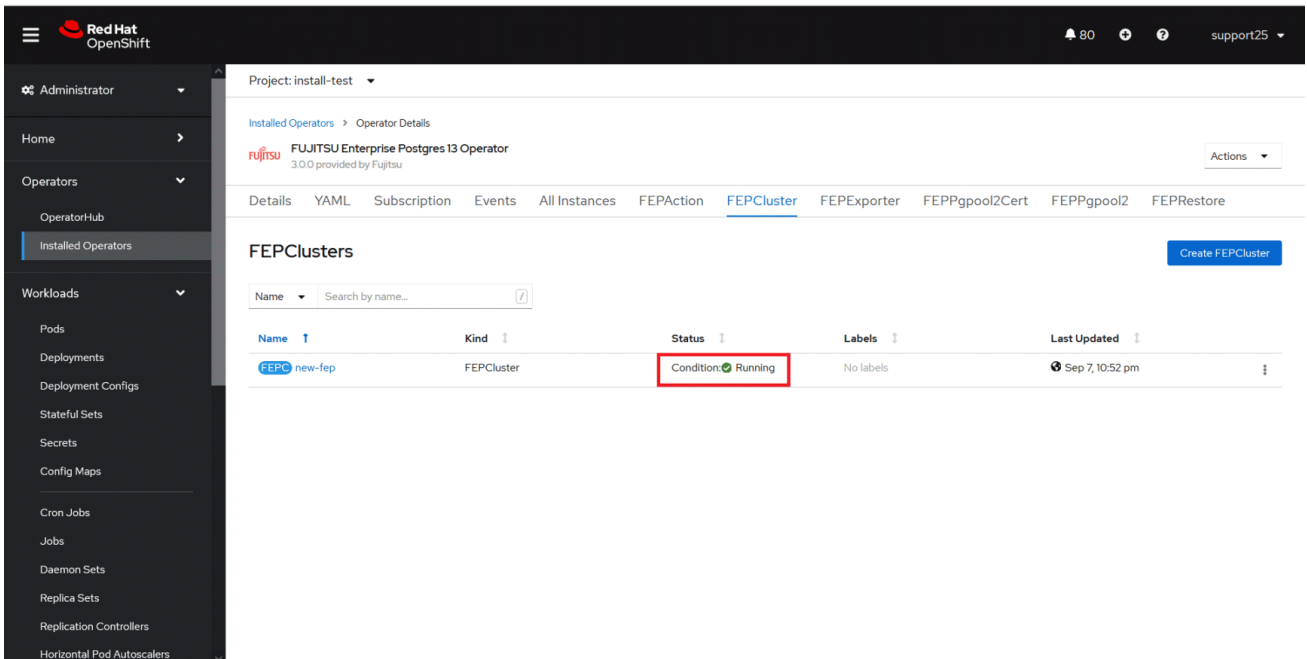
This name must be unique within a namespace.



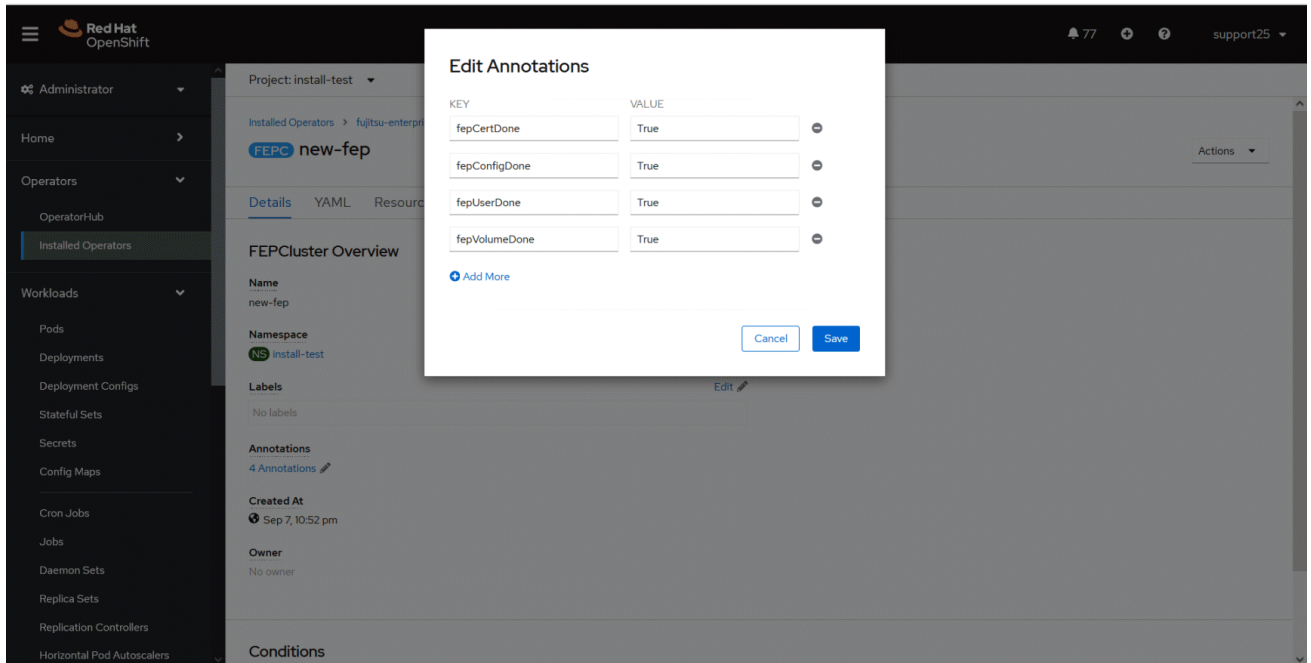
- In YAML View, starting value of CR is visible and one can choose to modify parameters before creating CR. Refer to the [Reference](#) for details of parameters. For example, add a configuration value for the customPgHba parameter according to your environment.



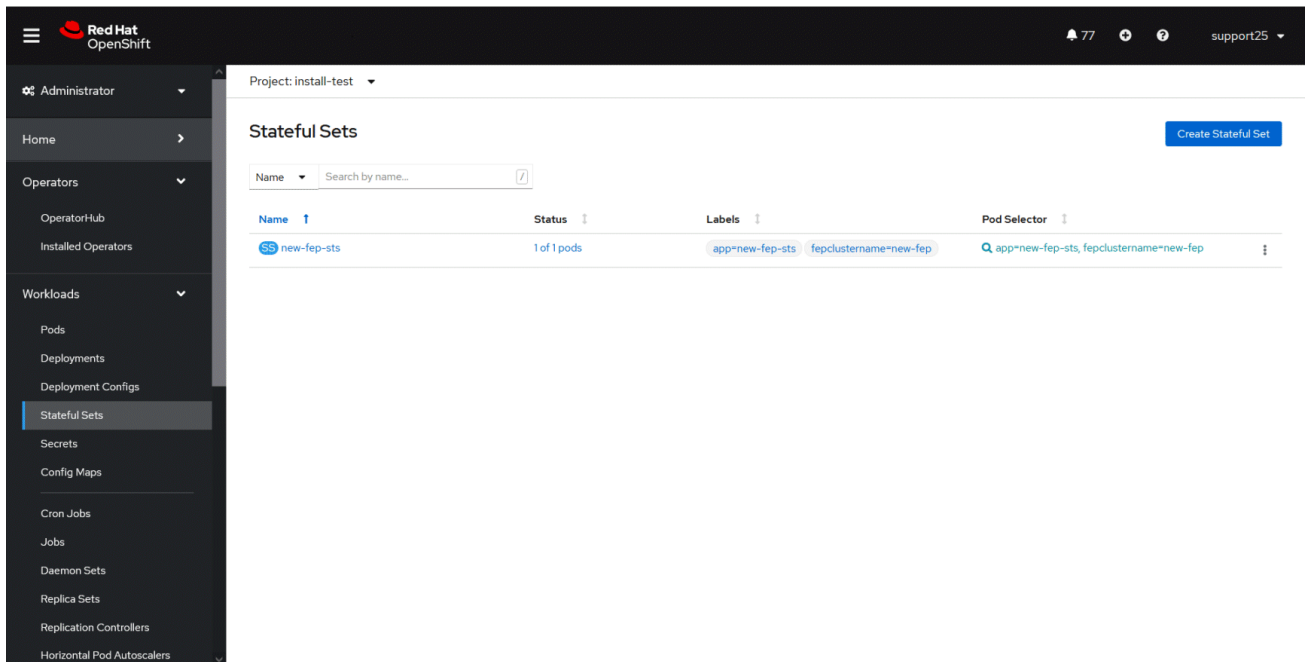
- When "Create" is clicked on either of two pages above, operator creates FEPCluster CR and there after one by one FEPCluster, FEPClusterBackup, FEPClusterConfig, FEPClusterVolume, FEPClusterUser and FEPClusterCert child CRs are created automatically. The starting values for child CRs are taken from "fepChildCrVal" section of FEPCluster CR yam1 file. Once child CRs are created, respective values are managed through child CRs only. If you want to change the value, modify the value in FEPCluster "fepChildCrVal" section. Operator reflects changes from FEPCluster parent CR to respective child CRs. Only allowable changes are reflected in child CRs. Child CRs are marked internal objects and hence will not be visible on OCP console. However, you can check child CRs using command line tools.



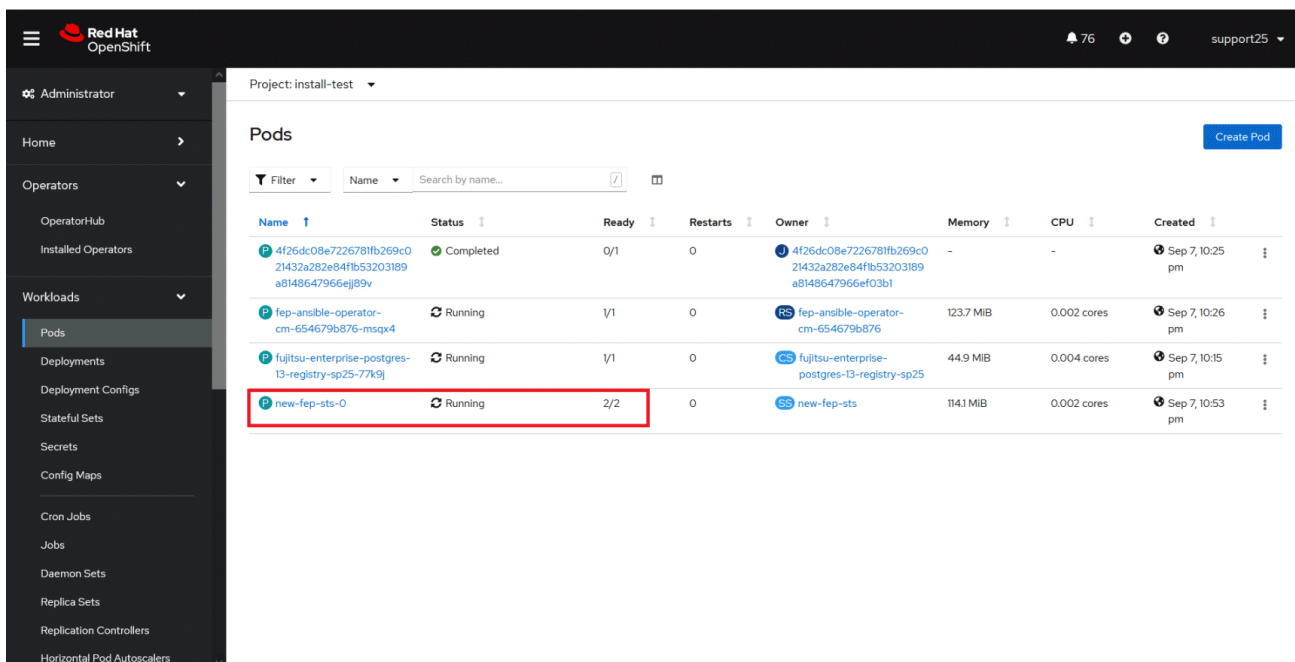
- In FEPCluster CR, annotations are added to indicate that child CRs are created successfully and has initialized properly. It may take some time to complete.



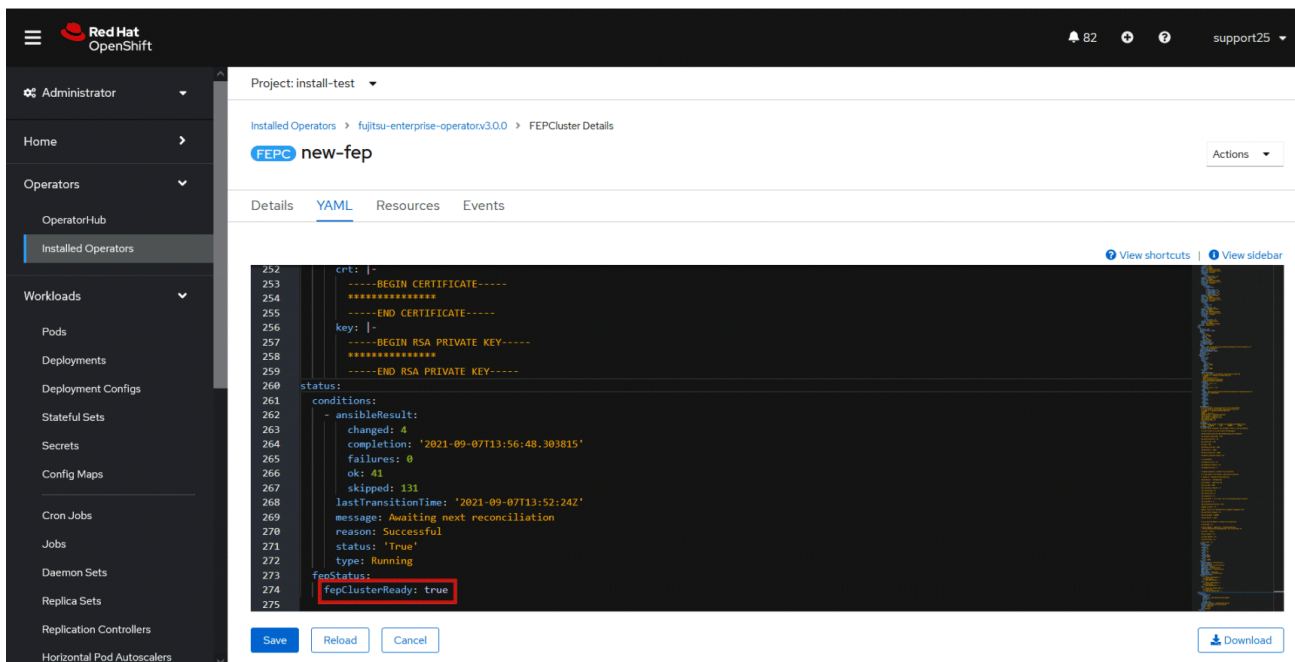
- Once all four child CRs are marked done in annotations, operator creates StatefulSet for the cluster.



- StatefulSet will start one FEP instance at one time and will wait it to be ready before starting next one.

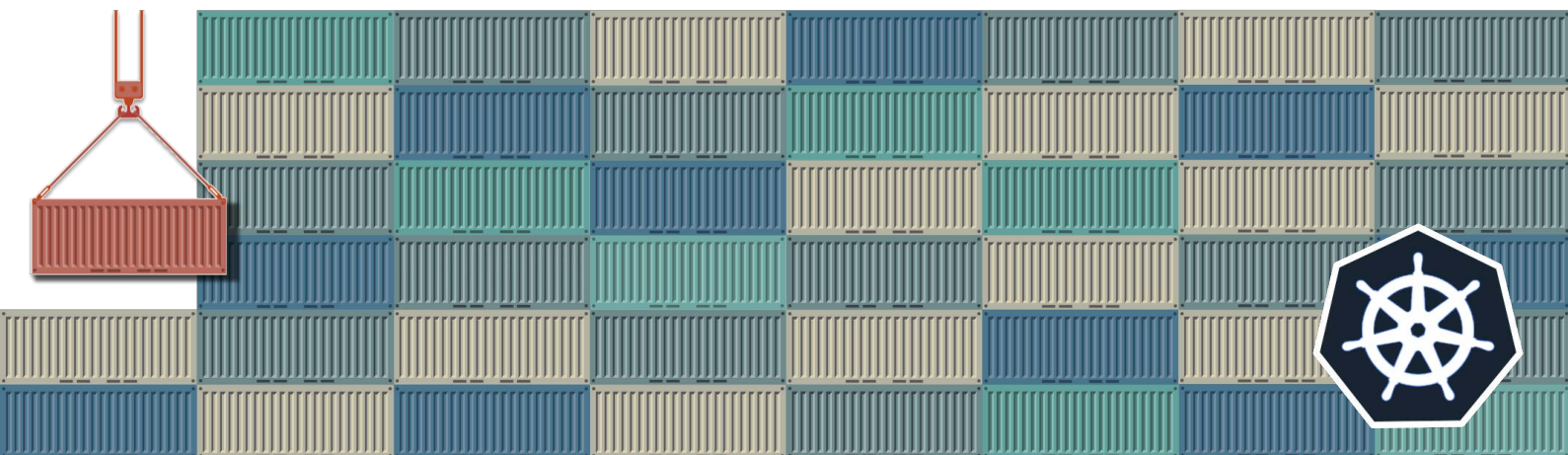


- Once all instances of FEP servers are started, operator marks a flag "fepClusterReady" in "fepStatus" section of CR to be **true**, indicating that FEPCluster is ready for use. Looking at YAML of FEPCluster CR, it would look like as below:



- Operator also masks the sensitive fields like passwords, passphrase, certificates and keys in FEPC cluster `fepChildCrVal` and also in child CRs.
- For further information, see [the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes Manuals](#)

# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes



## Overview

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document explains the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes concepts to those who are to operate databases using it.

This document explains the features of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for people who are:

- Considering installing FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes
- Using FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes for the first time
- Wanting to learn about the concept of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes
- Wanting to see a functional overview of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- Linux
- Kubernetes
- Containers
- Operators

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Know about the Product](#)

Explains the features of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.

### [Chapter 2 Know What it does](#)

Explains what you need to do.

### [Appendix A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes](#)

Explains the OSS supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.

## Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manual:

Full Name	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres	FEP or FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres
Custom Resource	CR
Custom Resource Definition	CRD
Persistent Volume	PV
GAP	Grafana, Alert Manager, Prometheus

## Abbreviations of manual titles

The following abbreviations are used in this manual as manual titles:

Full Manual Title	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes User's Guide	User's Guide

**Trademarks**

- Linux is a registered trademark or trademark of Mr. Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.
- Red Hat and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- S/390 is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation ("IBM") in the U.S. and other countries.

Other product and company names mentioned in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

**Export restrictions**

If this document is to be exported or provided overseas, confirm legal requirements for the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act as well as other laws and regulations, including U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and follow the required procedures.

**Issue date and version**

Edition 6.0: October 2022 Edition 5.0: June 2022 Edition 4.0: March 2022 Edition 3.0: December 2021 Edition 2.0: October 2021 Edition 1.0: September 2021
--

**Copyright**

Copyright 2021-2022 FUJITSU LIMITED

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Know about the Product.....	1
1.1 What is FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes?.....	1
1.2 Operator Features.....	1
1.2.1 Cluster Deployment.....	2
1.2.1.1 Creating a FEPCluster.....	2
1.2.1.2 Creating a FEP Pgpool2 Container.....	3
1.2.2 Highly Available Feature.....	3
1.2.2.1 Automatic Failover.....	3
1.2.2.2 Automatic Recovery.....	3
1.2.2.3 Manual Switchover.....	3
1.2.3 Backup Recovery.....	4
1.2.3.1 Automatic Backup.....	4
1.2.3.2 Point-in-time Recovery.....	4
1.2.4 Configuration Change.....	4
1.2.4.1 Parameter Change.....	4
1.2.4.2 Resource Change.....	4
1.2.5 Minor Version Upgrade.....	4
1.2.5.1 Minor Version Upgrade.....	4
1.2.6 FEP Features.....	5
1.2.6.1 Scope of FEP Feature Support.....	5
1.2.7 Monitoring & Alert.....	5
1.2.7.1 Monitoring.....	5
1.2.7.2 Alert and Event.....	6
1.2.8 Scaling Replicas.....	6
1.2.8.1 Automatic Scale out.....	6
1.2.8.2 Manual Scale in/out.....	6
1.3 Operator System Configuration.....	6
Chapter 2 Know What it does.....	8
2.1 Deployment.....	8
2.2 High Availability ( Automatic failover and recovery ).....	8
2.3 Configuration Change.....	8
2.4 Minor Version Upgrade.....	9
2.5 Configurable Volume Per Cluster.....	9
2.6 Deploying Pgpool-II and Connect to FEPCluster from Operator.....	9
2.7 Scheduling Backup from Operator.....	9
2.8 Perform PITR and Latest Backup Restore from Operator.....	10
2.9 Monitoring & Alert.....	11
2.10 Scaling Replicas.....	12
Appendix A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.....	13



# Chapter 1 Know about the Product

This chapter explains the features of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.

## 1.1 What is FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes?

FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes provides automated operations for installing and managing your FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 on OpenShift Container Platform.

There are multiple components in the solution.

**FEP operator:** Manages the lifecycle of FEP server container, including deployment, configuration update, backup and recovery of FEP database.

**FEP server container:** Contains the FEP server software to run the Postgres engine.

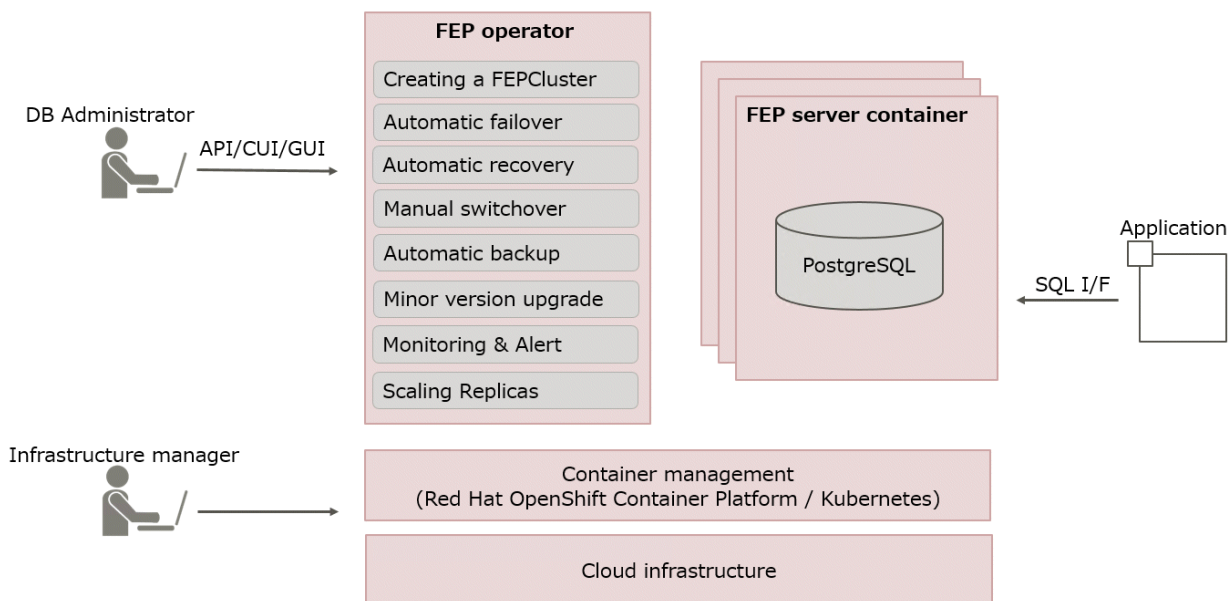
**FEP backup container:** Contains the FEP server software to perform scheduled backup operations.

**FEP restore container:** Contains the FEP server software to perform the restore operation.

**FEP pgpool2 container:** Contains the FEP server software to use Pgpool-II to provide load balancing and connection pooling.

**FEP exporter container:** expose various health metrics to Prometheus for monitoring

Up and running in minutes, the operator provides the features required to maximise the benefits of this enterprise PostgreSQL solution.



This operator will deploy a standalone as well as highly available FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres cluster with pre-defined configuration to get started with small workload. User can adjust the configuration parameters at the time of deployment and after to make the instance suitable for the workload.

As the name implies, the FEP server container is intended to incorporate the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres server component.

In principle, a running FEP server container is considered as equivalent to a FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Server instance.

## 1.2 Operator Features

This product provides operator services to automate the construction and operation of databases on the customer's container management infrastructure. The features of the operator are as follows:

- Cluster Deployment
  - [Creating a FEPCluster](#)
  - [Creating a FEP Pgpool2 Container](#)
- Highly Available Feature
  - [Automatic Failover](#)
  - [Automatic Recovery](#)
  - [Manual Switchover](#)
- Backup Recovery
  - [Automatic Backup](#)
  - [Point-in-time Recovery](#)
- Configuration Change
  - [Parameter Change](#)
  - [Resource Change](#)
- [Minor Version Upgrade](#)
- [FEP Features](#)
- [Monitoring & Alert](#)
- [Scaling Replicas](#)

## 1.2.1 Cluster Deployment

---

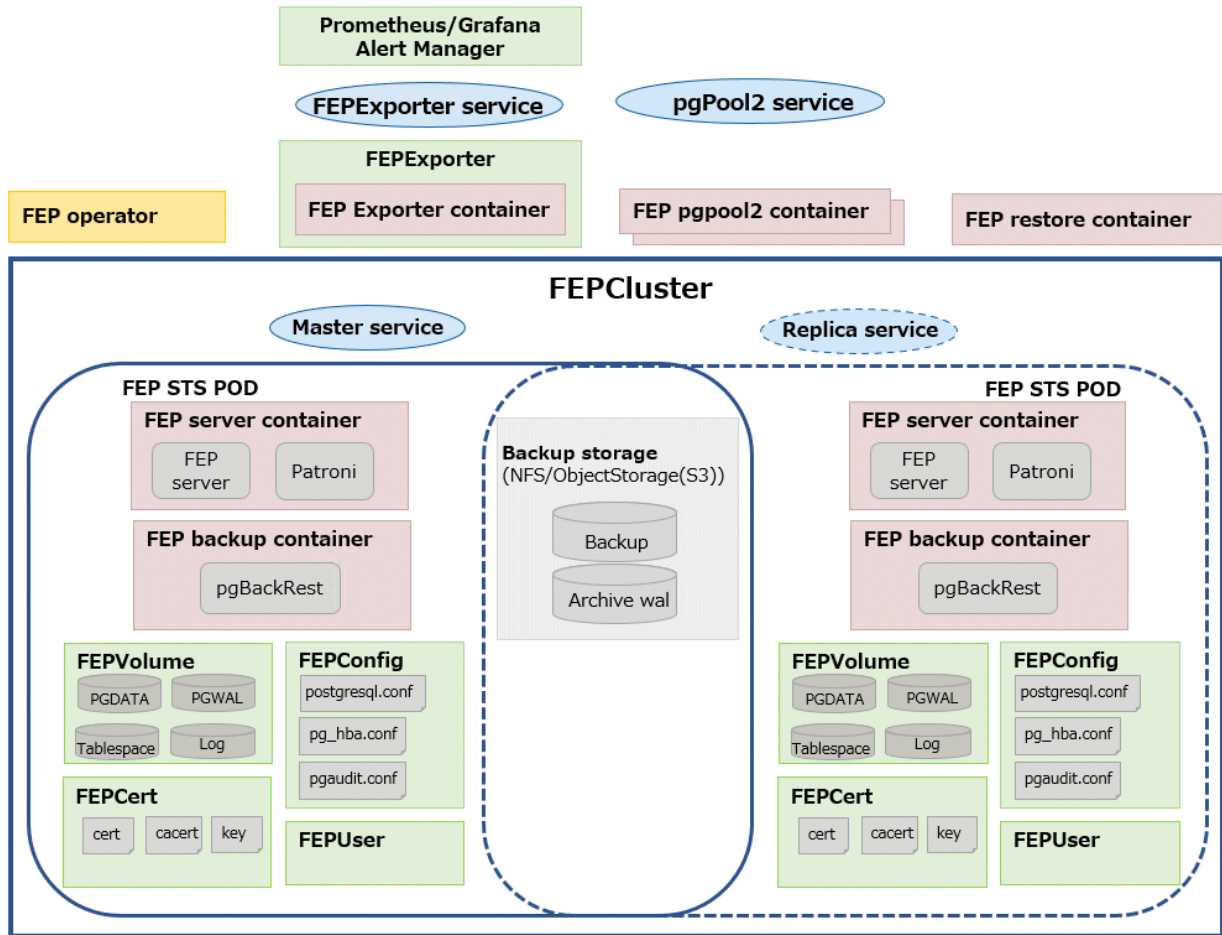
### 1.2.1.1 Creating a FEPCluster

Users can instruct the operator to build a system that includes the provisioning of containers and volumes with FEP installed, and network resources. The resulting system is called a FEPCluster. The FEPCluster can be created a single master server or multi-servers with one master and two replicas. You can choose between synchronous and asynchronous replication replica servers. The default is synchronous replication.

FEPCluster is composed of the following components:

- FEP server container
  - FEP server
  - Patroni
- FEP backup container
- CR FEPVolume for volumes
- CR FEPUser for database users
- CR FEPConfig for Postgres configuration
- CR FEPCert for secrets such as TLS certificate, keystore passphrase

The Below diagram depicts a FEPCluster with one Master and one Replica POD.



### 1.2.1.2 Creating a FEP Pgpool2 Container

Users can deploy Pgpool-II for load balancing and connection pooling with FEP pgpool2 container.

Users can deploy multiple FEP pgpool2 Pods in a single deployment to increase availability.

## 1.2.2 Highly Available Feature

---

### 1.2.2.1 Automatic Failover

When an error is detected in the container or POD of the master server, the cluster will perform an automatic failover by promoting one of the replicas to become the new master, and the connection destination of the database is switched. The database connection is broken, but you can reconnect by establishing a connection from the application again.

### 1.2.2.2 Automatic Recovery

If an error occurs on the master server and an automatic failover occurs, the POD or container of the failed old master server is automatically restarted and reincorporated into the cluster as a replica server.

If a replica server fails, it automatically restarts and rejoins the cluster as a replica server.

### 1.2.2.3 Manual Switchover

You can manually switch any replica server to the master server. In this case, the original master server becomes the replica server.

## 1.2.3 Backup Recovery

---

### 1.2.3.1 Automatic Backup

By taking regular backups, you can be prepared for full database downtime or data corruption due to application errors. Users can set an arbitrary schedule for automatic backup. The backup type can be a full backup or an incremental backup. You can back up the database to shared storage such as NFS persistent volume or AWS S3 compatible storage. Backups can be automatically deleted by setting a retention period of your choice.

### 1.2.3.2 Point-in-time Recovery

Point-in-time recovery can be used to recover data at specific times due to business failures or to replicate a cluster for migration to production. Allows point-in-time recovery from automated backup data to restore the cluster. You can choose between restoring data to an existing cluster and a new cluster. You can also choose to restore to the most recent data or to any time you specify.

## 1.2.4 Configuration Change

---

### 1.2.4.1 Parameter Change

You can change the parameters that make up the FEP. PostgreSQL provides two types of parameters: those that take effect immediately, and those that take effect after restarting FEP server process.

- postgresql.conf
- pg\_hba.conf
- pgaudit.conf



For parameters that take effect immediately, operator will apply the change to all FEP Pods and reload the FEP server process automatically. There is no outage on the cluster.

For parameters that take effect after restarting FEP server process, operator will update the configuration files on all FEP Pods. However, users have to initiate a manual restart of FEP process on all the FEP Pods using the FEPAction CR. There is a momentary outage on the cluster and the users should perform this action at a time that has least disruption to the service.

### 1.2.4.2 Resource Change

You can change the amount of CPU and memory resources allocated to FEP server containers, FEP backup containers, or FEP pgpool2 containers by changing the FEPCluster CR. The operator will apply the change to the Statefulset. However, the users have to perform a restart of all the Pods for the new resource allocation to take effect.



Changing resource allocation will not take effect immediately. The users have to restart all the Pods for new resource allocation to take effect. There is a momentary outage on the cluster and the users should perform this action at a time that has least disruption to the service.

## 1.2.5 Minor Version Upgrade

---

### 1.2.5.1 Minor Version Upgrade

New and patched FEP releases are made available as new container image. When the latest container image is provided, the user can perform a minor version upgrade by changing the FEPCluster CR. The operator will perform a rolling update to enable the minor version upgrade with minimal system disruption.

## Note

The minor version upgrade will take effect immediately. There is a momentary outage on the cluster and the users should perform this action at a time that has least disruption to the service.

## 1.2.6 FEP Features

---

### 1.2.6.1 Scope of FEP Feature Support

#### Note

These features also require the FEP Client ISO.

The FEPCluster that is created supports the following features in addition to the PostgreSQL features of OSS. Enhances security and performance with transparent data encryption to prevent data loss in the event of database storage theft and in-memory capabilities with column-type index and data memory resident features to speed aggregation. Details of each feature can be found in the FEP documentation.

Category	Feature
Operation	pgAdmin
	Global Meta Cache
Security	Transparent Data Encryption
	Audit Log
	Data Masking
High Performance	In-memory feature
	High-speed data load
Application Interface	Java Integration
	ODBC Integration
	.NET Framework Integration
	Embedded SQL Integration (C language)
	Embedded SQL Integration (COBOL)

## 1.2.7 Monitoring & Alert

---

### 1.2.7.1 Monitoring

Infrastructure administrator can start monitoring database almost simultaneously with database construction with standard monitoring tools.

Evaluation indicator data from a database point of view is provided in a format that can be displayed in Prometheus and Grafana.

The monitoring items are as follows:

- Database health
- OS performance information
- Disk usage
- Backup status
- Client connection information

### 1.2.7.2 Alert and Event

Alerts enable infrastructure administrator to immediately understand and address anomalies. Define anomalous conditions from Monitoring's Matrix and set notifications in Prometheus. It is possible to integrate alerts with other services like emails, slack, sms or back-office systems for communication and action.

Perform recovery processing at the application layer after failover, synchronize with database backup, perform application backup, etc.

## 1.2.8 Scaling Replicas

You can dynamically expand a read replica depending on the load on the read replica.

### 1.2.8.1 Automatic Scale out

With automatic scale out, the operator automatically extends the read replica according to the policy you specify.

The available policies are controlled by the CPU load or number of connections of read replica instance to automatically extend beyond a specified threshold.

### 1.2.8.2 Manual Scale in/out

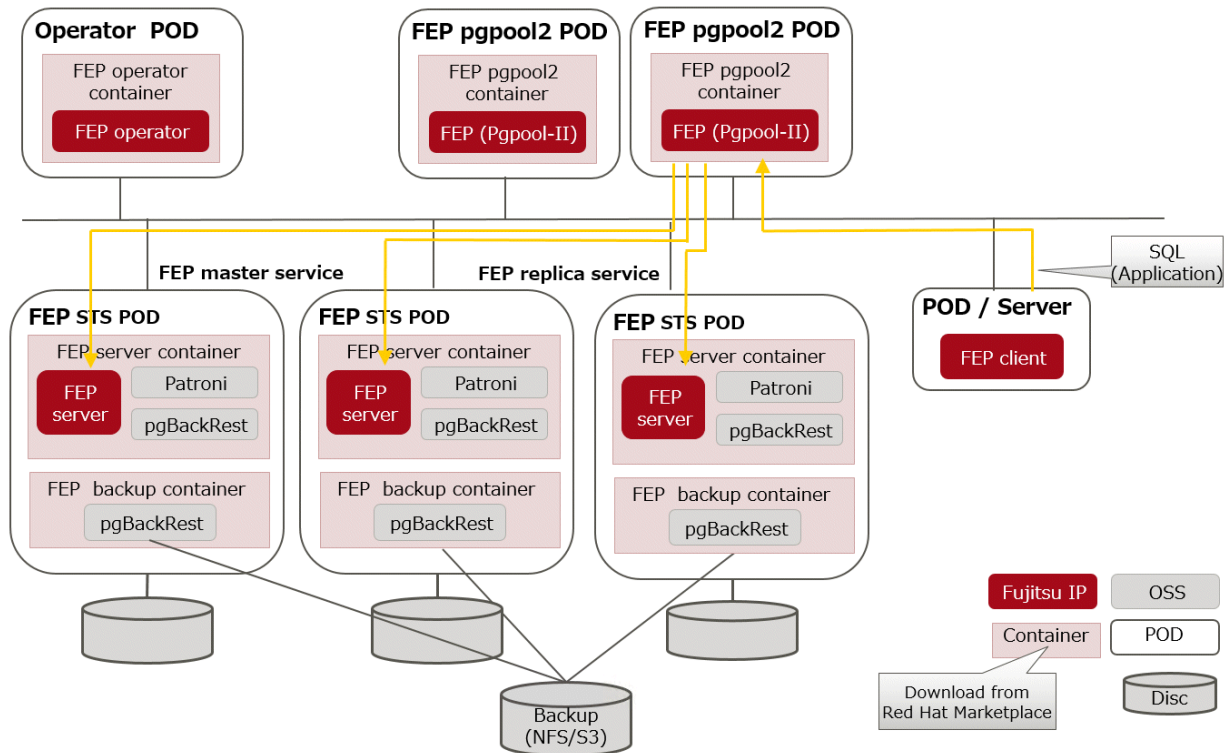
You can scale out or scale in the read replica at any time. This can be done by manipulating the CR of the FEPCluster.

## 1.3 Operator System Configuration

The basic relationships among POD, containers and services are as follows.

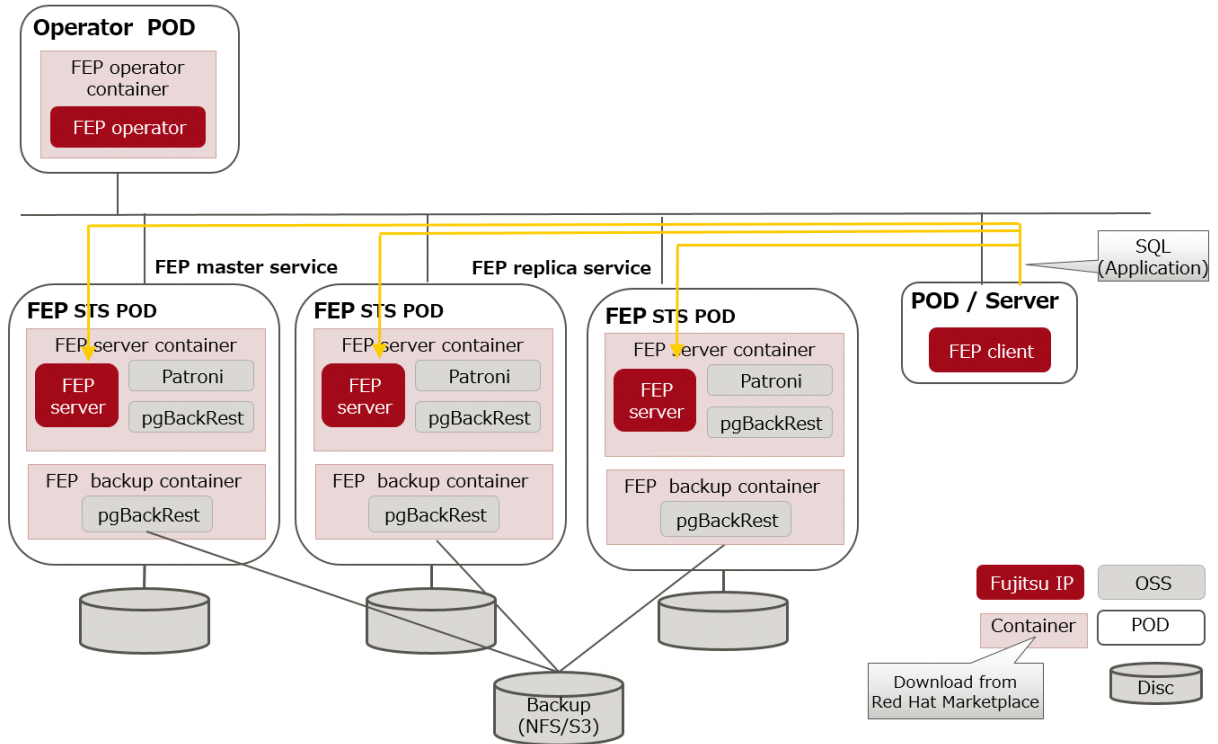
### Example) Deployment with Pgpool-II

In this deployment scenario, Pgpool-II is used to provide connection pooling and load balancing. End user application will point its connection to Pgpool service. Depending on the transaction type, Pgpool will forward the connection to either the Master Pod or the Replica Pod. If a failover/switchover occurs, the FEP pgpool2 will direct traffic to the new FEP master Pod. This is transparent to the end user application.



## Example) Deployment without Pgpool-II

Users can also run applications such as SQL directly against the FEPCluster without configuring Pgpool-II. In this deployment scenario, end user application will point its connection to the FEP master service. If a failover/switchover occurs, the FEP master service will point to the new FEP master Pod automatically. The end user application will experience a disconnection. When it re-establishes the connection, it will be connected to the new FEP master Pod. There is no need to reconfigure the application connection string.



# Chapter 2 Know What it does

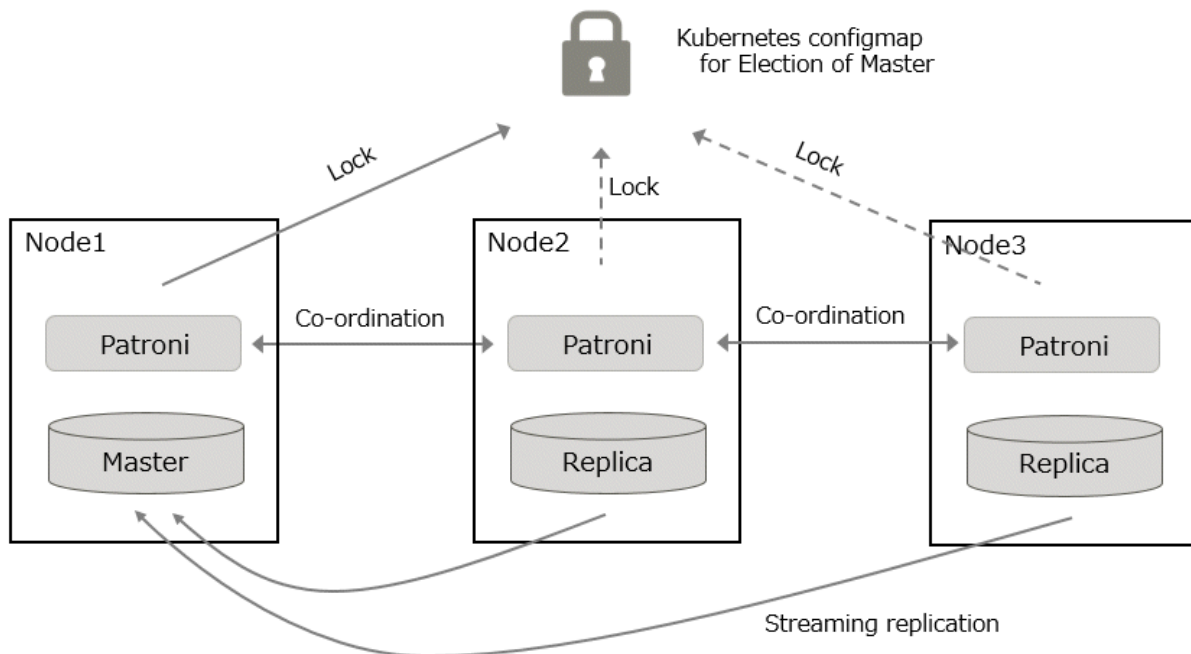
This chapter explains what you need to do.

## 2.1 Deployment

FEP operator is responsible for the lifecycle of FEPCluster. The operator will deploy a HA FEPCluster, together with all the associated containers such as backup container.

## 2.2 High Availability ( Automatic failover and recovery )

The high availability and failover management of FEP is provided by Patroni. Both Patroni and FEP will be installed on the same container image. Patroni will then initialize and start an FEP instance. Patroni will then acquire a lock on a shared resource. In our case, it is a Kubernetes configmap. Whichever POD that can acquire the lock will become the Master. When subsequent FEP server container starts, Patroni will initialize that POD as a Replica with streaming replication.



If Patroni detects a failure in the cluster, either because the Postgres process crashed or the container where Postgres is running dies, Patroni will initiate a failover automatically.

## 2.3 Configuration Change

Traditionally, changing FEP configurations such as postgresql.conf, pg\_hba.conf, TLS certificates and keystore passphrase will require a redeployment of FEP server container. That causes an outage in a Highly Available environment.

A new CRD FEPCConfig is defined to encapsulate those configurations. The operator will monitor the CR with this CRD definition and perform action accordingly to minimize outages. For example, operator will reload FEP daemon, instead of redeploying the FEP server container when a reloadable postgresql.conf parameter is changed. If a parameter change requires restart of FEP (e.g. max\_connections), the operator will update the configuration file but defer the restart. End user can follow a defined procedure to restart the cluster manually at a scheduled maintenance time.



## 2.4 Minor Version Upgrade

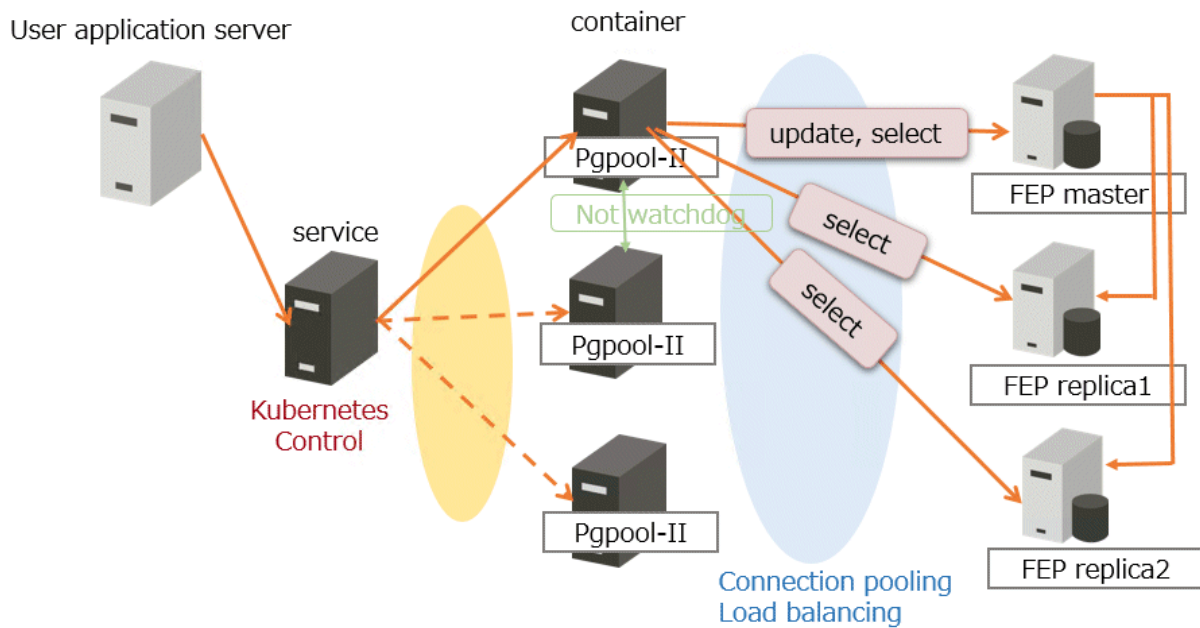
FEP version Minor upgrade is done by updating the Custom Resource with a new FEP image name. The POD will be redeployed with new image in a controlled manner. First, replica servers are upgraded, restarted and waited to be ready, one server at a time. When all replicas are upgraded, a controlled switchover is performed to pick a new master. Once that is done, the old master is upgraded as well.

## 2.5 Configurable Volume Per Cluster

To improve performance, may want to separate the volume storing database files and WAL files. Similarly, one may want to use a dedicated volume for a new tablespace. The operator gives the end user the flexibility to create a FEPCluster with multiple PVs and select a suitable storage class for the PV. For example, one can create a FEPCluster with data volume, wal volume on a storage class backed up by SSD and a log volume on a storage class backed up by HDD.

## 2.6 Deploying Pgpool-II and Connect to FEPCluster from Operator

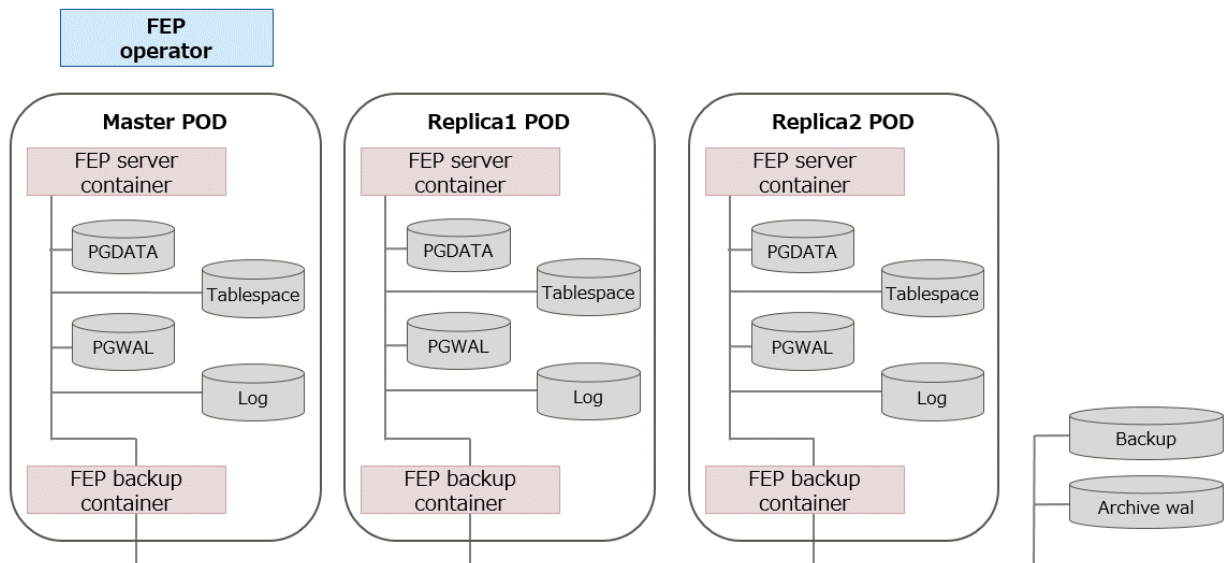
Users can deploy the FEP pgpool2 container and access the database via Pgpool-II to use load-balancing and connection pooling features. Multiple FEP pgpool2 containers can be deployed for load-share and high availability. Users can request a Kubernetes service to distribute their work across multiple FEP pgpool2 containers.



## 2.7 Scheduling Backup from Operator

The FEP backup container is deployed as a sidecar to each FEP server POD. The backup is performed at scheduled time set by the user (like crontab). The FEP backup container determines if the FEP server in the POD is a master or replica, and will perform the backup process only on the master POD. The volume storing backup and archived WAL files must be on a shared storage such as NFS or AWS S3.

Backup and WAL archiving is accomplished with pgBackRest.

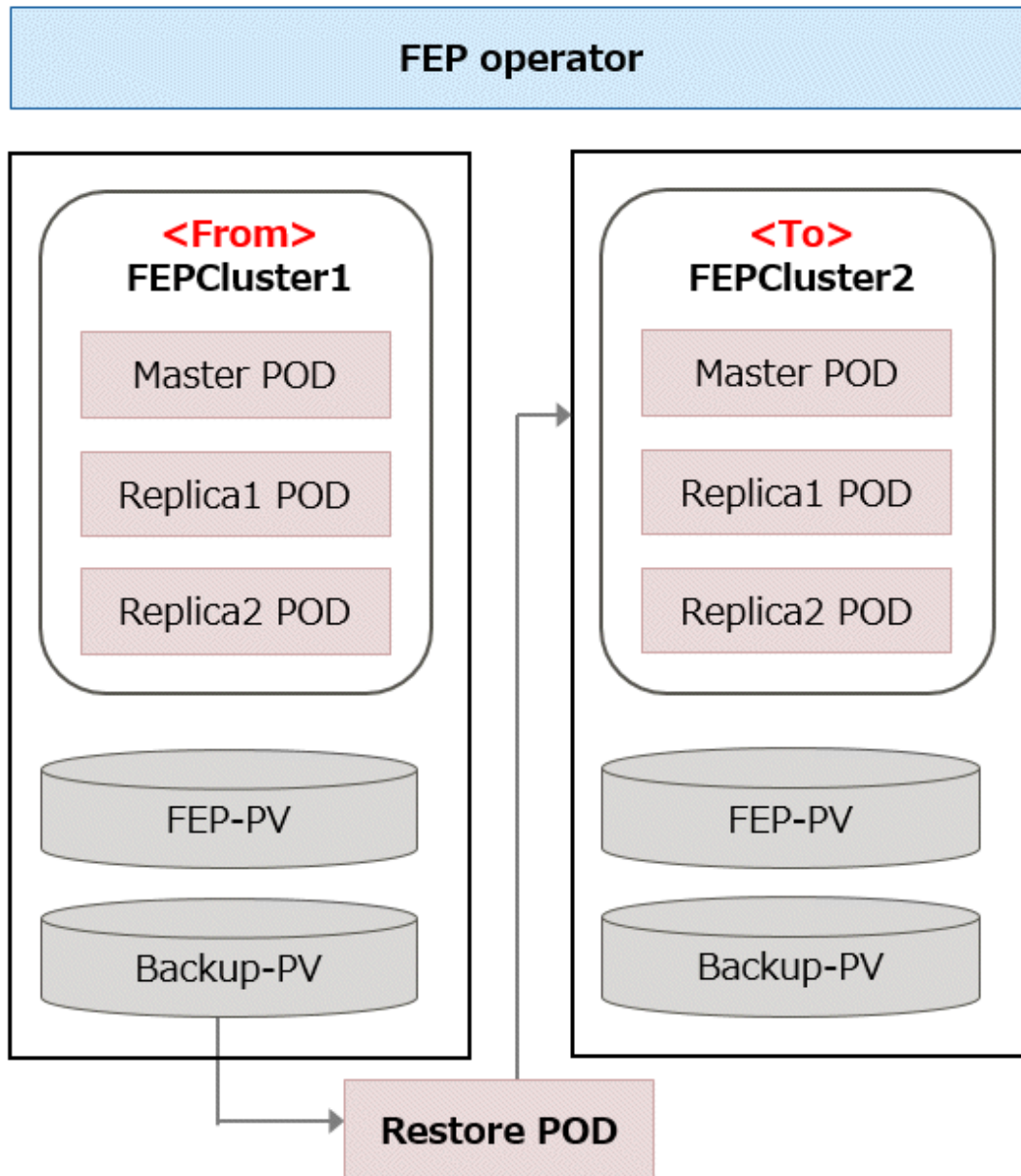


## 2.8 Perform PITR and Latest Backup Restore from Operator

There are two types of restore: one is to restore backup data to an existing FEP cluster, and the other is to create a new FEP cluster and restore backup data.

The former retains the attributes of the FEP cluster, such as IP address and name, while the latter is created from scratch.

The restore process deploys a restore container. The restore container performs the pgBackRest restore operation from the backup data to be restored to the master server of the FEP cluster. After the data is restored to the master server, the FEP cluster is created by synchronizing the data to two replica servers.



## 2.9 Monitoring & Alert

Monitoring and alerts system leverages standard GAP stack ( Grafana, Alert manager, Prometheus) deployed on OCP(OpenShift Container Platform) and Kubernetes. GAP stack must be there before FEP operator & FEPCluster can be deployed.

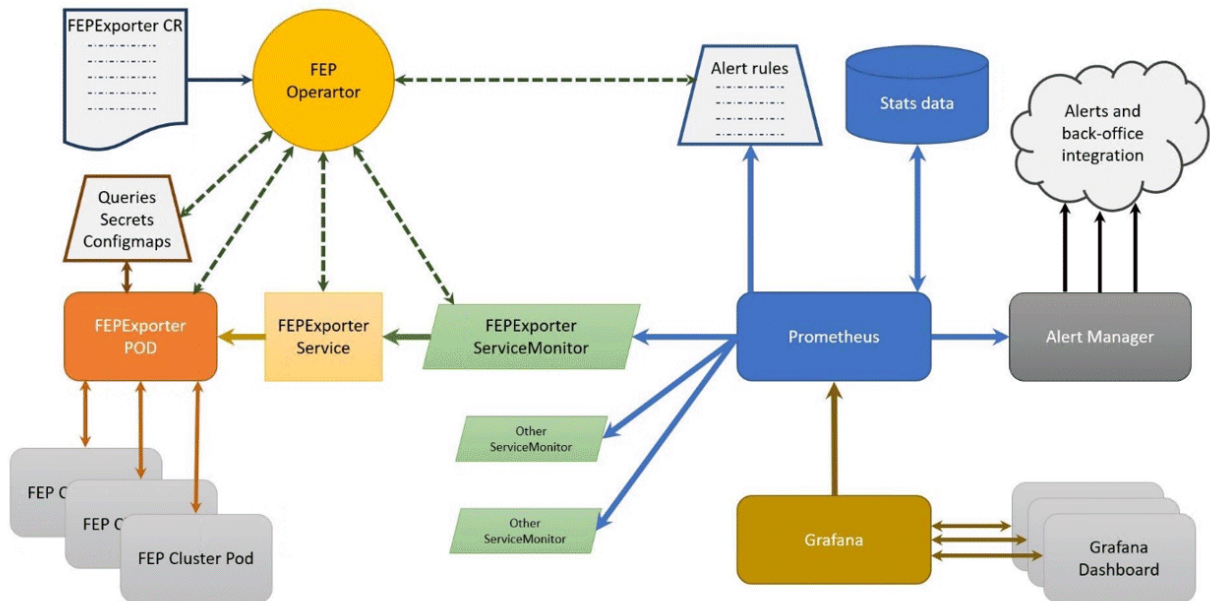
Prometheus is a condensed way to store time-series metrics. Grafana provides a flexible and visually pleasing interface to view graphs and gauges of FEP metrics stored in Prometheus.

Together they let store large amounts of metrics that user can slice and break down to see how the FEP database is behaving. They also have a strong community around them to help deal with any usage and setup issues.

The Prometheus acts as storage and a polling consumer for the time-series data of FEP container. Grafana queries Prometheus to displaying informative and very pretty graphs.

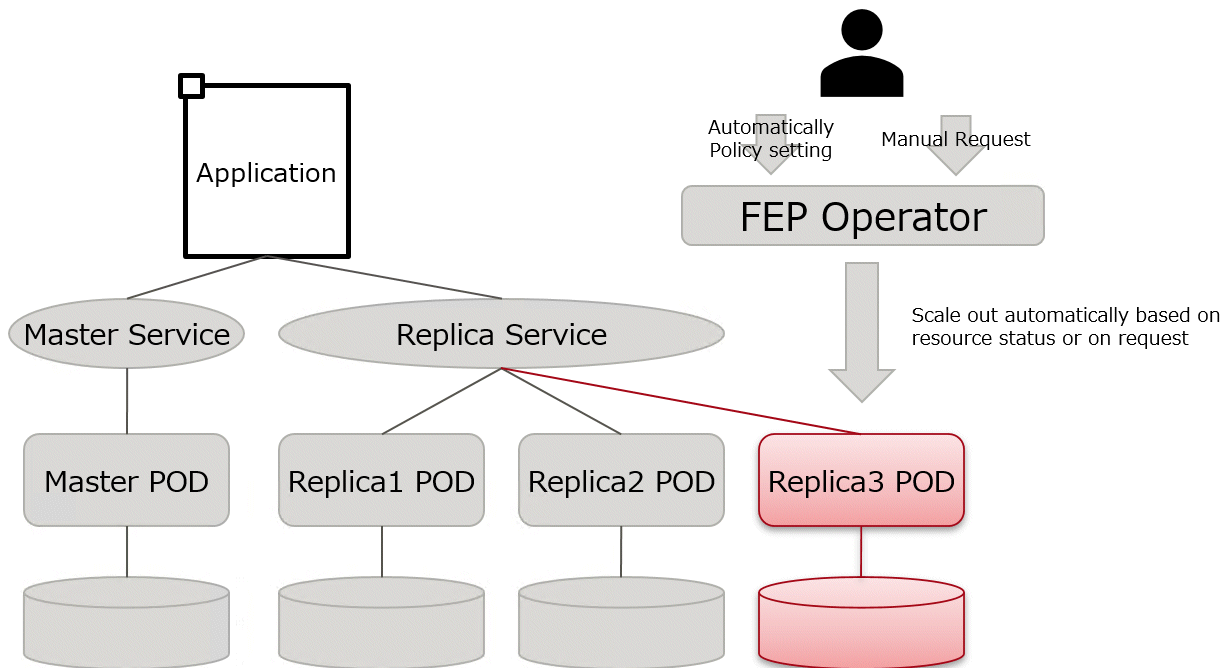
If Prometheus rules are defined, it also evaluates rules periodically to fire alerts to Alert manager if conditions are met. Further Alert manager can be integrated with external systems like email, slack, SMS or back-office to take action on alerts raised.

Metrics from FEP Cluster(s) is collected by Prometheus through optional components deployed using FEP Exporter with default set of metrics and corresponding Prometheus rules to raise alerts. User may extend or overwrite metrics by defining their custom metrics queries and define their custom Prometheus rules for alerting.



## 2.10 Scaling Replicas

The scaling feature creates a replica of the reference replica either automatically or manually by the customer. By querying the reference replica service, the customer will be able to direct the query to the automatically added replica instance.

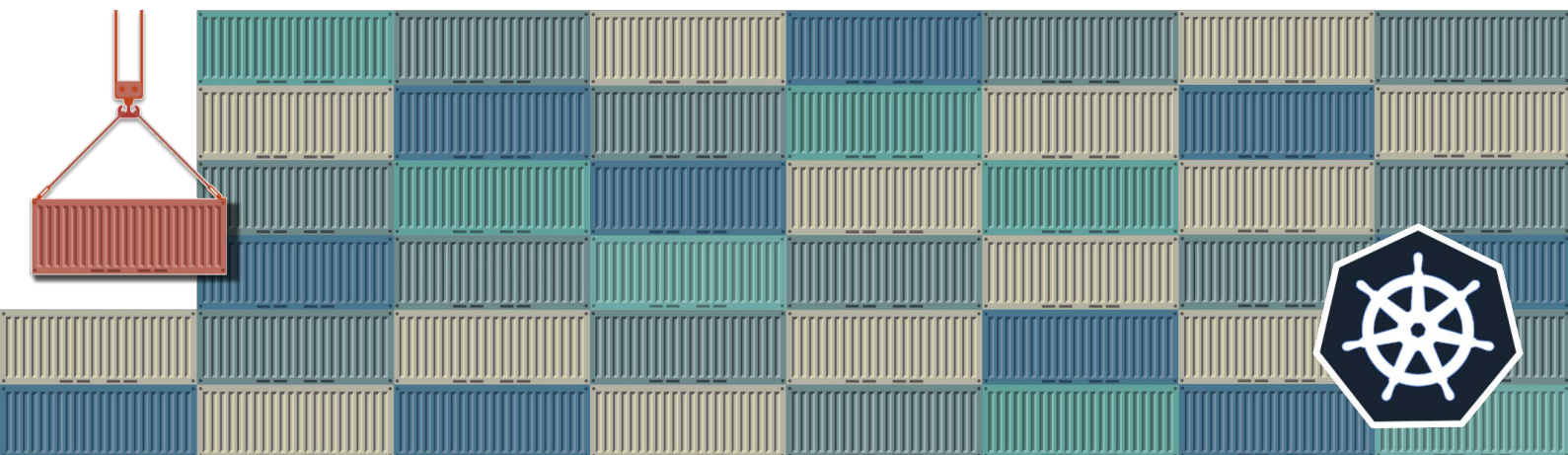


# Appendix A OSS Supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes

The OSS supported by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes is listed below.

OSS name	Version and level	Description	Reference
PostgreSQL	13.8	Database management system	PostgreSQL Documentation
orafce	3.18.1	Oracle-compatible SQL features	"Compatibility with Oracle Databases" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Application Development Guide
Pgpool-II	4.2.8	Failover, connection pooling, load balancing, etc.	"Pgpool-II" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_statsinfo	12.1	Collection and accumulation of statistics	"pg_statsinfo" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_hint_plan	13.1.3.7	Tuning (statistics management, query tuning)	- "pg_hint_plan" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server - "Optimizer Hints" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Application Development Guide
pg_dbms_stats	1.5.0		- "pg_dbms_stats" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server - "Locked Statistics" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Application Development Guide
pg_repack	1.4.6	Table reorganization	"pg_repack" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_rman	1.3.13	Backup and restore management	"pg_rman" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pgBadger	11.7	Log analysis	"pgBadger" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server
pg_bigm	1.2 -20200228	Full-text search (multibyte)	"pg_bigm" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server
PostgreSQL JDBC driver	42.2.18	JDBC driver	"JDBC Driver" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Application Development Guide
psqlODBC	13.00.0000	ODBC driver	"ODBC Driver" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Application Development Guide
pgBackRest	2.30	Backup and restore management	"Scheduling Backup from Operator" in the User's Guide
patroni	2.1.0	Postgres cluster management	"High Availability" in the User's Guide
Python	3.7.5	PL/Python	
postgres-exporter	0.9.0	Postgresql metrics monitoring capabilities for Prometheus with Fujitsu updated queries	"Monitoring" in the User's Guide

# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes



## User's Guide

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document describes system configuration, design, installation, setup, and operational procedures of the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes.

## Intended readers

This document is intended for people who are:

- Considering installing FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes
- Using FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes for the first time
- Wanting to learn about the concept of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes
- Wanting to see a functional overview of FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- Linux
- Kubernetes
- Containers
- Operators

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 System Requirements](#)

Describes the system requirements.

### [Chapter 2 Overview of Operator Design](#)

Describes an overview of the operator design.

### [Chapter 3 Operator Installation](#)

Describes the installation of the FEP operator.

### [Chapter 4 Deployment Container](#)

Describes container deployment.

### [Chapter 5 Post-Deployment Operations](#)

Describes the operation after deploying the container.

### [Chapter 6 Maintenance Operations](#)

Describes the maintenance operation after deploying the container.

### [Chapter 7 Abnormality](#)

Describes the actions to take when an error occurs in the database or an application.

### [Appendix A Quantitative Values and Limitations](#)

Describes the quantitative values and limitations.

### [Appendix B Adding Custom Annotations to FEPCluster Pods using Operator](#)

Describes instructions for adding custom annotations to a FEPCluster pod.

### [Appendix C Utilize Shared Storage](#)

Describes how to build a FEPCluster when using shared storage.

## Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manual:

Full Name	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres	FEP or FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres
Vertical Clustered Index	VCI
Transparent Data Encryption	TDE
Point in time recovery	PITR
Custom Resource	CR
Custom Resource Definition	CRD
Persistent Volume	PV
Universal Base Image	UBI
OpenShift Container Platform	OCP
Mutual TLS	MTLS

## Abbreviations of manual titles

The following abbreviations are used in this manual as manual titles:

Full Manual Title	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes Release Notes	Release Notes
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes Overview	Overview
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes User's Guide	User's Guide
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes Reference	Reference

## Trademarks

- Linux is a registered trademark or trademark of Mr. Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.
- Red Hat and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- S/390 is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States or other countries or both.

Other product and company names mentioned in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Export restrictions

If this document is to be exported or provided overseas, confirm legal requirements for the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act as well as other laws and regulations, including U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and follow the required procedures.

## Issue date and version

Edition 9.0: June 2023
Edition 8.0: October 2022
Edition 7.0: September 2022
Edition 6.0: June 2022



Edition 5.0: March 2022  
Edition 4.0: December 2021  
Edition 3.0: November 2021  
Edition 2.0: October 2021  
Edition 1.0: September 2021

## **Copyright**

Copyright 2021-2023 FUJITSU LIMITED

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 System Requirements.....	1
1.1 Components Embedded.....	1
1.2 CPU.....	1
1.3 Supported Platform.....	1
1.4 Collaboration Tool.....	1
Chapter 2 Overview of Operator Design.....	2
2.1 Design Task.....	2
2.2 System Configuration Design.....	2
2.2.1 Server Configuration.....	2
2.2.2 User Account.....	4
2.2.3 Basic Information of the Container.....	4
2.3 Design Perspective for Each Feature.....	6
2.3.1 Deployment.....	7
2.3.2 High Availability.....	7
2.3.3 Configurable Volume per Cluster.....	8
2.3.4 Deploying Pgpool-II and Connect to FEPCluster from Operator.....	10
2.3.5 Scheduling Backup from Operator.....	12
2.3.5.1 Important Setting Items.....	13
2.3.5.2 Parameters that cannot be Set.....	13
2.3.5.3 Restricted Parameters.....	16
2.3.5.4 About Sections in the Config File.....	16
2.3.6 Perform PITR and Latest Backup Restore from Operator.....	16
2.3.7 FEP Unique Feature Enabled by Default.....	16
2.3.8 Monitoring & Alert (FEPEXporter).....	17
2.3.8.1 FEPEXporter Custom Resource.....	17
2.3.8.2 Change to FEPCluster CR - metrics user.....	17
2.3.8.3 FEPEXporter CR auto-create for FEPCluster.....	17
2.3.9 Scaling Replicas.....	17
2.3.9.1 Change to FEPCluster CR - autoscale.....	17
Chapter 3 Operator Installation.....	18
3.1 Pre-requisite.....	18
3.2 Deploying Operator.....	19
3.3 Implement Collaborative Monitoring Tools.....	21
Chapter 4 Deployment Container.....	23
4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator.....	23
4.2 Deploy a Highly Available FEPCluster.....	28
4.3 Deploying FEPEXporter.....	30
4.4 FEPEXporter in Standalone Mode.....	31
4.5 Configuration FEP to Perform MTLs.....	33
4.5.1 Manual Certificate Management.....	34
4.5.2 Automatic Certificate Management.....	37
4.5.3 Deploy FEPCluster with MTLs support.....	40
4.5.4 Configurable Parameters.....	47
4.6 Replication Slots.....	49
4.6.1 Setting Up Logical Replication using MTLs.....	49
Chapter 5 Post-Deployment Operations.....	53
5.1 Configuration Change.....	53
5.2 FEPCluster Resource Change.....	54
5.2.1 Changing CPU and Memory Allocation Resources.....	54
5.2.2 Resizing PVCs.....	54
5.3 FEPPGPool2 Configuration Change.....	55
5.4 Scheduling Backup from Operator.....	56

5.5 Configure MTLS Setting.....	57
5.5.1 Certification Rotation.....	57
5.6 Monitoring.....	57
5.6.1 Monitoring FEP Operator and Operands.....	58
5.6.2 Monitoring FEP Server.....	59
5.6.2.1 Architecture.....	59
5.6.2.2 Default Server Metrics Monitoring.....	60
5.6.2.3 Default Alerts.....	62
5.6.2.4 Graphical user interface.....	62
5.6.3 Monitoring FEP Backup.....	62
5.6.3.1 pgbackrest_info_backup view.....	63
5.6.4 Monitoring FEP PGPool2.....	63
5.6.4.1 pgpool2_stat_load_balance view.....	63
5.6.4.2 pgpool2_stat_conn_pool view.....	64
5.6.4.3 pgpool2_stat_sql_command view.....	64
5.7 Event Notification.....	64
5.7.1 Events raised.....	65
5.7.2 Viewing the custom events.....	65
5.8 Scaling Replicas.....	66
5.8.1 Auto Scale Out.....	66
5.8.2 Manual Scale In/Out.....	66
<b>Chapter 6 Maintenance Operations.....</b>	<b>68</b>
6.1 Minor Version Upgrade.....	68
6.2 Cluster Master Switchover.....	68
6.3 Perform PITR and the Latest Backup Restore from Operator.....	68
6.3.1 Setting Item.....	69
6.3.2 After Restore.....	69
6.4 Major Version Upgrade.....	69
6.4.1 Install a New Version of the Operator.....	69
6.4.2 Deploy a New Version of a Container.....	69
6.4.3 Migrating Data Between Containers.....	69
6.4.4 Removing Old Containers.....	70
6.4.5 Uninstalling Old Operators.....	70
6.5 Assigned Resources for Operator Containers.....	71
6.5.1 How to Change Assigned Resources.....	71
<b>Chapter 7 Abnormality.....</b>	<b>73</b>
7.1 Handling of Data Abnormalities.....	73
7.2 Handling when the Capacity of the Data Storage Destination or Transaction Log Storage Destination is Insufficient.....	73
7.3 What to do when the Capacity of the Backup Data Storage Area is Insufficient.....	73
7.4 Handling Access Abnormalities When Instance Shutdown Fails.....	73
7.5 Collection of Failure Investigation Information.....	73
<b>Appendix A Quantitative Values and Limitations.....</b>	<b>75</b>
A.1 Quantitative Values.....	75
A.2 Limitations.....	75
<b>Appendix B Adding Custom Annotations to FEPCluster Pods using Operator.....</b>	<b>76</b>
<b>Appendix C Utilize Shared Storage.....</b>	<b>78</b>
C.1 Creating a StorageClass.....	78
C.2 Creating a PersistentVolume.....	78
C.3 Creating FEPCluster.....	79

# Chapter 1 System Requirements

This chapter describes the system requirements.

## 1.1 Components Embedded

The FEP Server container embeds following components. However it is understood that these components are bound to be upgraded in the maintenance phase.

No	Component	Version	Description
1	Red Hat UBI minimal	8	Meant to provide base OS image for the container
2	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Server	13.8	To provide server capabilities
3	Patroni	2.1.0	To provide HA capabilities and other management to the Cluster

## 1.2 CPU

It should be noted that it provides supports to both the following CPU Architectures to meet the scope of work.

No	CPU architecture
1	x86
2	s390x

## 1.3 Supported Platform

It supports running on the following platforms.

No	Platform	Version
1	OpenShift Container Platform	4.10, 4.11, 4.12

Supports storage supported by OpenShift.

However, backup and archive WAL volumes require shared storage, such as NFS.

## 1.4 Collaboration Tool

Supports integration with the following tools for monitoring and alerting.

No	Tool	Version	How to obtain
1	Prometheus	The version installed OpenShift	Preinstalled with OpenShift
2	AlertManager		
3	Grafana	Grafana v7.5.17 and later	Provided by OperatorHub (v4.7.1 and later)

# Chapter 2 Overview of Operator Design

This chapter describes an overview of the operator design.

## 2.1 Design Task

This section describes the operation of FEP.

First, determine the configuration. You then design each feature and deploy the container. You can use FEP features immediately after deployment.

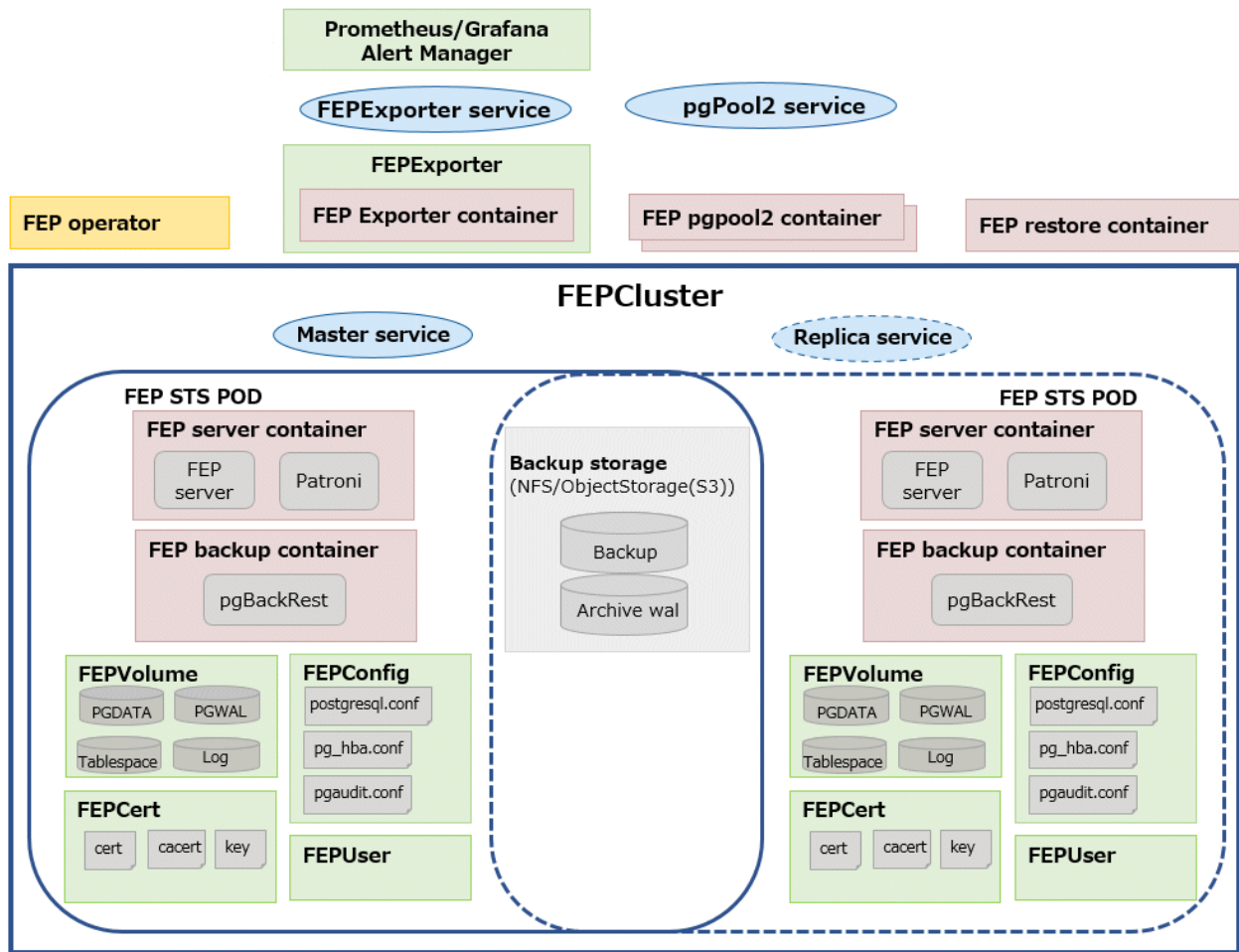
Task	Design required to operate FEP	Where to find
FEP setup	Required.	<a href="#">2.3.1 Deployment</a>
High availability configuration	Optional. (When checking or changing the behavior of high availability. However, even by default, constant high availability operation is possible.)	<a href="#">2.3.2 High Availability</a>
Volume settings	Optional. (When setting the volume. However, even by default, allocate a fixed volume.)	<a href="#">2.3.3 Configurable Volume per Cluster</a>
Pgpool-II setup	Optional. (When using Pgpool-II.)	<a href="#">2.3.4 Deploying Pgpool-II and Connect to FEPCluster from Operator</a>
Backup/restore settings	Optional. (When using a backup and restore.)	<a href="#">2.3.5 Scheduling Backup from Operator</a> <a href="#">2.3.6 Perform PITR and Latest Backup Restore from Operator</a>
Monitoring & Alert(FEPExporter)	Optional. (When using Monitoring and Alert )	<a href="#">2.3.8 Monitoring &amp; Alert (FEPExporter)</a>
Scaling Replicas	Optional. (When using scaling feature )	<a href="#">2.3.9 Scaling Replicas</a>

## 2.2 System Configuration Design

This section describes the system configuration.

### 2.2.1 Server Configuration

The following is an overview diagram of the server configuration:



## System component

Describes various system resources.

Configuration server type	Description
FEP operator	A container that accepts user requests and is responsible for automating database construction and operational operations.
FEP server container	A container for the FEP server.
FEP backup container	A container that performs scheduled backup operations. Created on the same POD as the FEP server container.
FEP restore container	A container that performs the restore operation. Temporarily created during a restore operation.
FEP pgpool2 container	A container that uses Pgpool-II to provide load balancing and connection pooling. If you do not use it, you do not need to create it.
FEP Exporter container	A container that exposes http/https endpoint for monitoring stats scraping.
Backup storage	Storage where backup data is stored. If you do not need to obtain a backup, you do not need to create one.
FEPCluster	Parent CR for FEP Cluster definition and configuration.
FEPBackup	Child CR for backup configuration.
FEPVolume	Child CR for volumes.
FEPConfig	Child CR for FEP configurations.

Configuration server type	Description
FEP Cert	Child CR for system certificates.
FEP User	Child CR for database users.
FEP Action	CR for performing actions.
FEP Exporter	CR for monitoring configuration.
Master service	A service to connect to the master FEP server.
Replica service	A service to connect to the replica FEP server.
Pgpool2 service	A service for connecting to Pgpool-II.
Fep exporter service	A service to scrape metrics from all FEP Cluster nodes.

## 2.2.2 User Account

The user accounts used by this product are as follows.

User type	User name	Description
Infrastructure administrator	Mandatory	A system administrator (superuser) who has root privileges on all the servers that make up this product.
Database administrator	Mandatory	Install, set up, start, stop, and perform operation and maintenance of this product.
Application developer	Mandatory	Develops and executes database applications.

## 2.2.3 Basic Information of the Container

This section describes the basic information of the container.

FEP server container

The naming convention for the FEP server container is as below.

fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:*OS-FEPBaseVersion-MajorVersion.MinorVersion-ARCH*

For each *Version*, specify the following:

Field	Values	Description
<i>OS</i>	ubi8	
<i>FEPBaseVersion</i>	13	
<i>MajorVersion</i>	1,2, ...	To be used when major change in image, including server patch application
<i>MinorVersion</i>	0,1,2 ...	To be used when minor changes in image, e.g bug fix in container script

The first publishing will expect following names / tagging (Manifest and Child images).

- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-1.0
  - fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-1.0-amd64
  - fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-1.0-s390x

## FEP backup container

Use the same naming convention for FEP backup containers as for FEP server containers.

fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup: *OS-FEPBaseVersion-MajorVersion.MinorVersion-ARCH*

For each *Version*, specify the following:

Field	Values	Description
<i>OS</i>	ubi8	
<i>FEPBaseVersion</i>	13	
<i>MajorVersion</i>	1,2, ...	To be used when major change in image, including server patch application
<i>MinorVersion</i>	0,1,2 ...	To be used when minor changes in image, e.g bug fix in container script

The first publishing will expect following names / tagging (Manifest and Child images)

- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup:ubi8-13-1.0
  - fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup:ubi8-13-1.0-amd64
  - fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup:ubi8-13-1.0-s390x

## FEP restore container

Use the same naming convention for FEP restore containers as for FEP server containers.

fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-restore: *OS-FEPBaseVersion-MajorVersion.MinorVersion-ARCH*

For each *Version*, specify the following:

Field	Values	Description
<i>OS</i>	ubi8	
<i>FEPBaseVersion</i>	13	
<i>MajorVersion</i>	1,2, ...	To be used when major change in image, including server patch application
<i>MinorVersion</i>	0,1,2 ...	To be used when minor changes in image, e.g bug fix in container script

The first publishing will expect following names / tagging (Manifest and Child images)

- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-restore:ubi8-13-1.0
  - fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-restore:ubi8-13-1.0-amd64
  - fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-restore:ubi8-13-1.0-s390x

## FEP pgpool2 container

Use the same naming convention for FEP pgpool2 containers as for FEP server containers.

fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-pgpool2: *OS-FEPBaseVersion-MajorVersion.MinorVersion-ARCH*

For each *Version*, specify the following:



Field	Values	Description
<i>OS</i>	ubi8	
<i>FEPBaseVersion</i>	13	
<i>MajorVersion</i>	1,2, ...	To be used when major change in image, including server patch application
<i>MinorVersion</i>	0,1,2 ...	To be used when minor changes in image, e.g bug fix in container script

The first publishing will expect following names / tagging (Manifest and Child images)

- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-pgpool2:ubi8-13-1.0
- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-pgpool2:ubi8-13-1.0-amd64
- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-pgpool2:ubi8-13-1.0-s390x

### FEP Exporter container

FEP Exporter container as for FEP server containers.

fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-exporter: *OS-FEPBaseVersion-MajorVersion.MinorVersion-ARCH*

For each *Version*, specify the following:

Field	Values	Description
<i>OS</i>	ubi8	
<i>FEPBaseVersion</i>	13	
<i>MajorVersion</i>	1,2, ...	To be used when major change in image, including server patch application
<i>MinorVersion</i>	0,1,2 ...	To be used when minor changes in image, e.g bug fix in container script

The first publishing will expect following names / tagging (Manifest and Child images)

- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-exporter:ubi8-13-1.0
- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-exporter:ubi8-13-1.0-amd64
- fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-exporter:ubi8-13-1.0-s390x

## 2.3 Design Perspective for Each Feature

---

This section describes the design of each feature.

### postgresql-cfg format

A postgresql-cfg represent ConfigMap for containing postgresql parameters. The file is used to contain the parameters which need to be reflected in postgresql.conf of the instance. Since patroni ignores all parameters which are not known by OSS postgresql.conf, an approach is defined to treat FEP Parameters in a special way.

The content of the ConfigMap is defined by key=value format. The following table shows the detail:

Spec	Example	Comment
The content may have multiple key/value pairs	foo=bar	-

Spec	Example	Comment
	foo1=bar1	
The value cannot have space unless quoted.	foo=bar bar2	Invalid
The quoted value cannot have another value after	foo='bar bar2' something	Invalid
The key value pair must have a '=' sign	-	-
White spaces are allowed before/after/between the key value pair	foo = bar	-
Any content after '#' will be ignored	# this is a comment foo=bar #this is a comment	-
The value may be quoted by single quotes	foo='bar bar2'	-
Single quote can be escaped by two single quotes	foo='It's ok'	Note: single quotes are not supported by Patroni edit-config command
Backslash '\' will be replaced by '\\' when invoking patronictl edit-config command	-	To avoid command line escape
When a key value pair is invalid, it will be ignored. the update continue to process next pair	foobar foo2=bar2	The 'foobar' will be ignored
The container script does not validate the key and value as long as they are in correct format.	-	-

It is recommended to use the psql's show command to verify parameter is setting correctly.

## 2.3.1 Deployment

---

### Information for the FEPCluster

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl apply -f FEPClusterCR.yaml`

This operation will create a FEPCluster with supplied information in FEPClusterCR.yaml.

Refer to "FEPCluster parameter" in the Reference for details.

## 2.3.2 High Availability

---

Describes the settings for using the highly available features.

### Arbitration

Patroni is used to control and monitor FEP instance startup, shutdown, status and trigger failover should the master instance fails. It plays a significant role in the solution. If the Patroni process dies, especially on master POD, without notice, the POD will not update the Patroni cluster lock. This may trigger an unwanted failover to one of the Replica, without corresponding corrective action on the running master. This can create a split brain issue. It is important to monitor Patroni's status to make sure it is running. This is done using liveness probe. Important to note that this is not expected to be configured by end user.

```
livenessProbe:
  httpGet:
    scheme: HTTP
    path: /liveness
```

```

port: 25001
initialDelaySeconds: 30
periodSeconds: 6
timeoutSeconds: 5
successThreshold: 1
failureThreshold: 3

```

### 2.3.3 Configurable Volume per Cluster

Cluster node (Pod) volumes are created according to the values set in the storage section of `fepChildCrVal` in the FEPCluster custom resource.



- After you create the FEPCluster for the first time, you cannot add new volumes later or modify the `storageClass` or `accessModes`.
- You can resize the initially created volume only if the underlying `storageClass` supports dynamic resizing.

The following is the schema for the storage section of the FEPCluster customer resource:

Field	Mandatory	Sub-Field	Default	Description
archivalVol	No	size	1Gi	Volume size of the archive log.  Refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server to help you design the size.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
backupVol	No	size	2Gi	Volume size of the backup.  Estimate based on the following formula:  (full backup generations + incr backup generations + 1) * dataVol size
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
dataVol	Yes	size	2Gi	Volume size of the data.  Refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and

Field	Mandatory	Sub-Field	Default	Description
				Setup Guide for Server and base the design on table/index size.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
logVol	No	size	1Gi	Volume size of the log.  If you change the log output level (default: WARNING) or enable the audit log feature, measure the actual amount of log output in a test environment.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
tablespaceVol	No	size	512Mi	Volume size of the tablespace.  When using tablespaces, as with dataVol, you should refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on sizing.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
walVol	Yes	size	1200Mi	Volume size of the transaction log.  Refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server to help you design the size.  Note that the default value for max_wal_size is 1 GB.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start

Field	Mandatory	Sub-Field	Default	Description
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start

The 'accessMode' is been incorporated for the inclusion of pgBadger layer later. Giving it a shared volume capability will allow pgBadger Container to read logs from multiple server instance ( master / replica ) and expose it via a WebServer.

## 2.3.4 Deploying Pgpool-II and Connect to FEPCluster from Operator

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl create FEPpgpool2`

This operation will create a FEP pgpool2 container with supplied information.

Field	Default	Details
apiVersion	fep.fujitsu.io/v1	Fixed
kind	FEPPgpool2	Fixed
metadata.name	-	List the name of the FEP pgpool2 container.
metadata.namespace	-	Specify the namespace of the environment where you want to deploy the operator.
spec.image	-	Specifies the FEP pgpool2 container image to provide.
spec.count	2	List the number of FEP pgpool2 containers to create.
spec.serviceport	9999	Describes the TCP port for connecting to the FEP pgpool2 container.
spec.statusport	9898	Identifies the TCP port for connecting to the PCP process.
spec.limits.cpu	400m	List the number of CPUs (restriction) to allocate to resources.limits.cpu.
spec.limits.memory	512Mi	Specifies the memory size (restriction) to allocate to resources.limits.memory.
spec.requests.cpu	200m	List the number of CPUs (request) to allocate to resources.requests.cpu.
spec.requests.memory	256Mi	Specifies the memory size (request) to allocate to resources.requests.memory.
spec.fepclustername	new-fep	Enter the FEPCluster name to connect to.
spec.customhba	-	If you want to use pool_hba.conf, describe what pool_hba.conf should contain from the line below.
spec.customparams	" "	" " and the Pgpool-II parameters. Refer to " <a href="#">Pgpool-II parameters</a> " for detail.
spec.custompcp	" "	If you use the pcp command, " " and the contents of pcp.conf from the line below.
spec.customsslkey	" "	If you want to do it, " " and the Beethoven key content in the line below.
spec.customsslcert	" "	If you want to do it, " " and the contents of the public x 509 certificate from the line below.
spec.customsslcaert	" "	If you want to do it, " " and the following lines describe the contents of the CA root certificate in PEM format.
spec.customlogsize	100 Mi	Specifies the persistent volume size for log output.

Field	Default	Details
spec.storageclassname	-	Specifies the storage class for log output.

## Pgpool-II parameters

The parameters that can be specified are shown in the table below. For details on the parameters, refer to the Pgpool-II manual.

Category	Parameter name (Specified format)	Restart required after change
<b>Connection settings</b>	listen_addresses (string)	Y
	pcp_listen_addresses (string)	Y
	num_init_children (integer)	Y
	reserved_connections (integer)	Y
<b>Authentication settings</b>	enable_pool_hba (boolean)	
	allow_clear_text_frontend_auth (boolean)	
	authentication_timeout (integer)	
<b>Backend settings</b>	backend_weight0 (floating point)	
	backend_weight1 (floating point)	
	backend_flag0	
	backend_flag1	
<b>Connection pooling</b>	connection_cache (boolean)	Y
	max_pool (integer)	Y
	listen_backlog_multiplier (integer)	Y
	serialize_accept (boolean)	Y
	child_life_time (integer)	Y
	client_idle_limit (integer)	
	child_max_connections (integer)	Y
	connection_life_time (integer)	Y
reset_query_list (string)		
<b>Error reporting and log acquisition</b>	client_min_messages (enum)	
	log_min_messages (enum)	
	log_statement (boolean)	
	log_per_node_statement (boolean)	
	log_client_messages (boolean)	
	log_hostname (boolean)	
	log_connections (boolean)	
	log_error_verbosity (enum)	
log_line_prefix (string)		
<b>Load sharing settings</b>	load_balance_mode (boolean)	Y
	ignore_leading_white_space (boolean)	
	white_function_list (string)	
	black_function_list (string)	

Category	Parameter name (Specified format)	Restart required after change
	black_query_pattern_list (string)	
	database_redirect_preference_list (string)	
	app_name_redirect_preference_list (string)	
	allow_sql_comments (boolean)	
	disable_load_balance_on_write (string)	Y
	statement_level_load_balance (boolean)	
<b>Health check</b>	connect_timeout (integer)	
<b>Streaming replication check</b>	sr_check_period (integer)	
	sr_check_user (string)	
	sr_check_password (string)	
	sr_check_database (string)	
	delay_threshold (integer)	
	log_standby_delay (string)	
<b>Secure Socket Layer (SSL)</b>	ssl (boolean)	Y
	ssl_ciphers (string)	Y
	ssl_prefer_server_ciphers (boolean)	Y
	ssl_ecdh_curve (string)	Y
	ssl_dh_params_file (string)	Y
<b>Other parameters</b>	relcache_expire (integer)	Y
	relcache_size (integer)	Y
	enable_shared_relcache (boolean)	Y
	relcache_query_target (enum)	
	check_temp_table (enum)	
	check_unlogged_table (boolean)	

## 2.3.5 Scheduling Backup from Operator

When creating a FEPCluster, users can obtain scheduled backups by setting up backup definitions. Users can also modify the backup schedule by modifying the Backup custom resource that was created.

A backup definition includes the following:

- Acquisition time (Specify in crontab format)
- Backup type (Full or incremental backups)

Backup is taken on master POD only.

Backup processing is performed by pgBackRest.

Parameter can be set to pgbackrestParams in CR definition.

The maximum number of backup schedules is 5.

See the pgBackRest User's Guide for details on the parameters.

However, some parameters are limited. Details are given below.

- [2.3.5.1 Important Setting Items](#)
- [2.3.5.2 Parameters that cannot be Set](#)

- [2.3.5.3 Restricted Parameters](#)
- [2.3.5.4 About Sections in the Config File](#)

### 2.3.5.1 Important Setting Items

Here are the important parameters for setting pgBackRest. This parameter sets the retention period of backup information. If automatic backup is set and this parameter is not set, the risk of overflowing the backup area increases.

Parameter	Overview of parameters	Setting value
Full Retention Option (repo retention -full)	Specify number of full backups to keep  No default (should be set according to user backup policy)	natural number
Full Retention Type Option (repo retention-full-type)	spec.retention -full Specifies whether the setting is a number of retention days (time) or a number of retention times (count)  No default (should be set according to user backup policy)	time/count

The following is a sample CR example of changing the backup retention period (How long the PITR is valid) to 30 days after a FEPCluster deployment by setting the above parameters.

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPClusterBackup
metadata:
  name: fepcluster-backup
spec:
  pgBackrestParams: |
    # define custom pgbackrest.conf parameters below to override defaults.
    [global]
    repo-retention-full = 30
    repo-retention-full-type = time
  ...

```

### 2.3.5.2 Parameters that cannot be Set

The following parameters in the pgBackRest Configuration Reference are not configurable.

Parameter	Overview of parameters	Reason
Copy Archive Option (--archive -copy)	Copy the WAL segments needed for consistency to the backup	To use internal fixed values
Backup from Standby Option (--backup-standby)	Back up from the standby cluster	Limited to backup from master
Stop Auto Option (--stop-auto)	Stops a previously failed backup on a new backup.	Because they are 9.6 not supported in
SSH client command Option (--cmd-ssh)	Path to ssh client executable	Not using ssh
Compress Option (--compress)	Use File Compression	For obsolete options (Use compress-type option instead)
Delta Option (--delta)	Restore or Backup with Checksum	For new restores only
Lock Path Option (--lock-path)	Path where the lock file is stored	To use internal fixed values



Parameter	Overview of parameters	Reason	
Keep Alive Option (--sck -keep-alive)	Enable keep-alive messages on socket connections	To use internal fixed values	
Spool Path Option (--spool-path)	Path to store temporary data for asynchronous archive-push and archive-get commands	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values	
Console Log Level Option (--log-level-console)	Console Log Level	It is not expected to operate on POD.	
Std Error Log Level Option (--log-level-stderr)	Stderr log level	It is not expected to operate on POD.	
Log Path Option (--log-path)	Log File Destination	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values	
Azure Repository Account Option (--repo-azure-account)	Azure account used to store the repository	Azure storage is not supported	
Azure Repository TLS CA File Option (--repo-azure-ca-file)	Use a non-default CA file for the Azure Repository TLS CA file system		
Azure Respository TLS CA Path Option (--repo-azure-ca-path)	Use non-default CA path for Azure Repository TLS CA path system		
Azure Repository Container Option (--repo-azure-container)	Azure repository container.Azure container used to store the repository.		
Azure Repository Host Option (--repo-azure-host)	Azure Repository Host		
Azure Repository Key Option (--repo-azure-key)	Azure Repository Shared Key or Shared Access Signature		
Azure Repository Key Type Option (--repo-azure-key-type)	Azure Repository Key Type		
Azure Repository Server Port Option (--repo-azure-port)	Azure Repository Server Port		
Azure Repository Server Certificate Verify Option (--repo-azure-verify-tls)	Validate Azure Repository Server Certificate.		
Repository Host Option (--repo-host)	Repository host for remote operations via SSH		Repository Host is not used
Repository Host Command Option (--repo-host-cmd)	Path of pgBackRest on Repository Host		
Repository Host Configuration Option (--repo-host-config)	Repository Host Configuration File Path		
Repository Host Configuration Include Path Option (--repo-host-config-include-path)	Repository hosts configuring include path		
Repository Host Configuration Path Option (--repo-host-config-path)	Repository Host Configuration Path		
Repository Host Port Option (--repo-host-port)	Repository host port when "repo-host" is configured		
Repository Host User Option (--repo-host-user)	Repository host user when "repo-host" is configured		

Parameter	Overview of parameters	Reason
Repository Path Option (--repo-path)	Path where backups and archives are stored	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values
Archive Retention Option (--repo-retention-archive)	The number of consecutive WAL backups to keep.	This option is not recommended, and WAL retention is controlled by the Full Retention Option and Full Retention Type Option.
Archive Retention Type Option (--repo-retention-archive-type)	Backup Type for WAL Retention	It is recommended not to change from the default.
Differential Retention Option (--repo-retention-diff)	Number of incremental backups to keep	No incremental backups
Archive Mode Option (--archive-mode)	Retains or disables the archive for the restored cluster.	To use internal fixed values
Include Database Option (--db-include)	Restore only the specified database	To restore the entire FEP cluster, including all databases
Link All Option (--link-all)	Restore all symbolic links.	To use internal fixed values
Link Map Option (--link-map)	Changes the destination of a symbolic link.	To use internal fixed values
Recovery Option Option (--recovery-option)	Setting options in postgresQL recovery.conf	To use internal fixed values
Tablespace Map Option (--tablespace-map)	Restoring tablespace to a specified directory	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values
Map All Tablespaces Option (--tablespace-map-all)	Restores all tablespaces to the specified directory	No tablespace required because there is only one tablespace per FEPCluster
PostgreSQL Host Option (--pg-host)	PostgreSQL host for remote operations via SSH	No SSH connection required
PostgreSQL Host Command Option (--pg-host-cmd)	Path of pgBackRest exe on the PostgreSQL host	To use internal fixed values
PostgreSQL Host Configuration Option (--pg-host-config)	Path of the pgBackRest configuration file	To use internal fixed values
PostgreSQL Host Configuration Include Path Option (--pg-host-config-include-path)	Setting pgBackRest on PostgreSQL host include path	To use internal fixed values
PostgreSQL Host Configuration Path Option (--pg-host-config-path)	Path to configure pgBackRest on the PostgreSQL host	To use internal fixed values
PostgreSQL Host Port Option (--pg-host-port)	SSH Port Specification	No SSH connection required
PostgreSQL Host User Option (--pg-host-user)	The logon user when hosting PostgreSQL, if pg-host is set.	No SSH connection required
PostgreSQL Path Option (--pg-path)	PostgreSQL data directory.	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values
PostgreSQL Port Option (--pg-port)	PostgreSQL Ports	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values
PostgreSQL Socket Path Option (--pg-socket-path)	PostgreSQL Unix socket path	For automatic determination from FEPCluster CR values

Parameter	Overview of parameters	Reason
PostgreSQL Database User Option (--pg-user)	PostgreSQL database user	To use internal fixed values

### 2.3.5.3 Restricted Parameters

Of the parameters in the pgBackRest Configuration Reference, the following parameters limit the configurable values.

Parameter	Overview of parameters	Possible Values
Repository Type Option (--repo-type)	Type of storage to use for the repository	posix/s3

### 2.3.5.4 About Sections in the Config File

In FEPBackup CR, you can write the contents of pgbackrest.conf, but the setting for stanza (Backup space for pgBackRest) is specified internally.

The following sections are not allowed;

[stanza: command] , [stanza]

## 2.3.6 Perform PITR and Latest Backup Restore from Operator

There are two types of restore: one is to restore backup data to an existing FEPCluster, and the other is to create a new FEPCluster and restore backup data.

The former retains the attributes of the FEPCluster, such as IP address and name, while the latter is created from scratch.

The restore process deploys a FEP restore container. The FEP restore container performs the pgBackRest restore operation from the backup data to be restored to the master server of the FEPCluster. After the data is restored to the master server, the FEPCluster is created by synchronizing the data to two replica servers.

If user create a new FEPCluster, the newly created FEPCluster will inherit the settings of the source cluster, unless otherwise specified

User can also create a cluster with different settings from the source cluster by including the settings in FEPRestore CR.

### Switching connections to the new cluster

The restore creates a new FEPCluster. If necessary, you need to set up Pgpool-II and change the access point of the application to the new cluster or the new Pgpool-II.

### About recovering a failed FEPCluster

Even if the existing FEPCluster fails and the FEP is not running, if the volume of the backup area is safe, it is possible to restore from the backup data.

## 2.3.7 FEP Unique Feature Enabled by Default

Enable the following FEP features:

- Data masking
- Transparent Data Encryption (TDE)

### Data masking

The Data masking is enabled by default in the example FEPClster CR (in openshift UI). The postgresql.conf in container contains the following parameters:

```
shared_preload_libraries = 'pgx_datamasking,pg_prewarm'
session_preload_libraries = 'pg_prewarm'
max_worker_processes= 20
```

The user can overwrite these values in config map.

## TDE

TDE is enabled by default. For details on how to specify the passphrase, refer to "FEPCluster parameter" in the Reference.

## 2.3.8 Monitoring & Alert (FEPEXporter)

---

As the operator is level 5 certified, the system expose various metrics about its operand i.e. FEP containers.

FEP generates lot of useful database statistics via various views. The default statistics can be further augmented by using extensions like `pg_stat_statements`.

FEPEXporter container by default is configured to extract useful database statistics and make the metrics available to Prometheus on the platform. External components and utilities can be used to visualise, analyse, trigger alerts and take operational decision based on exposed metrics.

FEPEXporter also sets default alert rules based on Prometheus metrics which are useful for active monitoring of FEP cluster.

### 2.3.8.1 FEPEXporter Custom Resource

Refer to "FEPEXporter Custom Resource" in the Reference for FEPEXporter Custom Resource parameters.

- Custom queries to scrape metrics can be added in CR in optional section.
- Custom Prometheus alert rules are created by user manually.

### 2.3.8.2 Change to FEPCluster CR - metrics user

User may define `pgMetricsUser`, `pgMetricsPassword` and `pgMetricsUserTls` in target FEPCluster. If it is defined, FEPEXporter will use metrics user details to connect to FEP cluster machines. All metrics user fields are optional and can be omitted in FEPCluster.

Refer to "FEPCluster Parameter" in the Reference for FEPCluster parameters.

### 2.3.8.3 FEPEXporter CR auto-create for FEPCluster

User may define `enableMonitoring` flag as part of FEPCluster CR to monitor FEPCluster. It will automatically create FEPCluster specific FEPEXporter so metrics scraping for FEPCluster will work.

Refer to "FEPCluster Parameter" in the Reference for FEPCluster parameters.

- FEPEXporter will be named as `<cluster-name>-fepeXporter`.
- Once FEPEXporter created automatically, user can modify it manually from FEPEXporter CR.
- If FEPCluster will be deleted, it will delete dependent FEPEXporter as well.
- MTLs for FEPEXporter will only supported when `tls` configuration defined for both Prometheus & FEPEXporter specs.

## 2.3.9 Scaling Replicas

---

Auto-scale-out occurs when the average CPU utilization of the DB container exceeds the threshold.

The maximum number of replica containers, excluding the master container, is 15.



When using the auto-scale-out feature, the FEPCluster sync mode should be 'off'.

---

### 2.3.9.1 Change to FEPCluster CR - autoscale

If you want to use Auto Scale Out, set the parameter to FEPClusterCR.

Refer to "FEPCluster Parameter" in the Reference for FEPCluster parameters.

# Chapter 3 Operator Installation

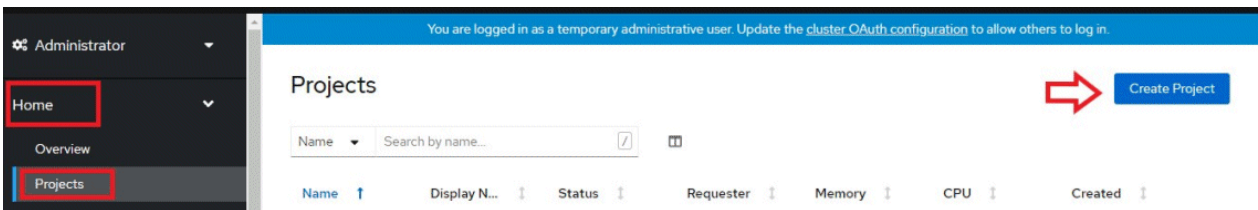
This chapter describes how to install FEP operator in a new namespace on openshift.

Refer to "6.5 Assigned Resources for Operator Containers" for more information about the resources assigned to installed operator containers and how to change them.

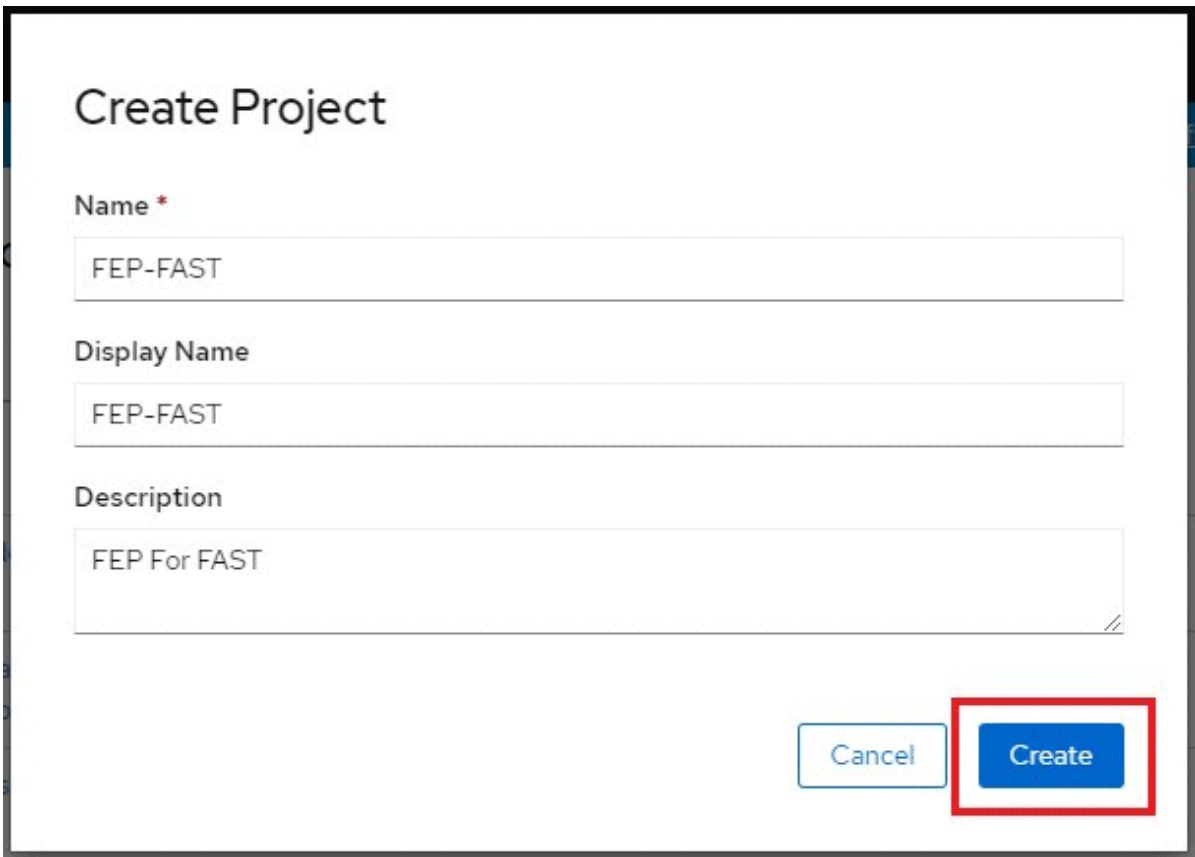
## 3.1 Pre-requisite

A project on openshift is essentially a namespace. It is a good practice to install FEP in a separate name space. On the RedHat OpenShift platform, click "Home" under "Projects" main menu and hence click on "Create Project".

( Screen Shot 1 and 2 - Create Project on OCP - *for ref.*)



In the dialog box, specify a unique name for your namespace and an optional display name and description.



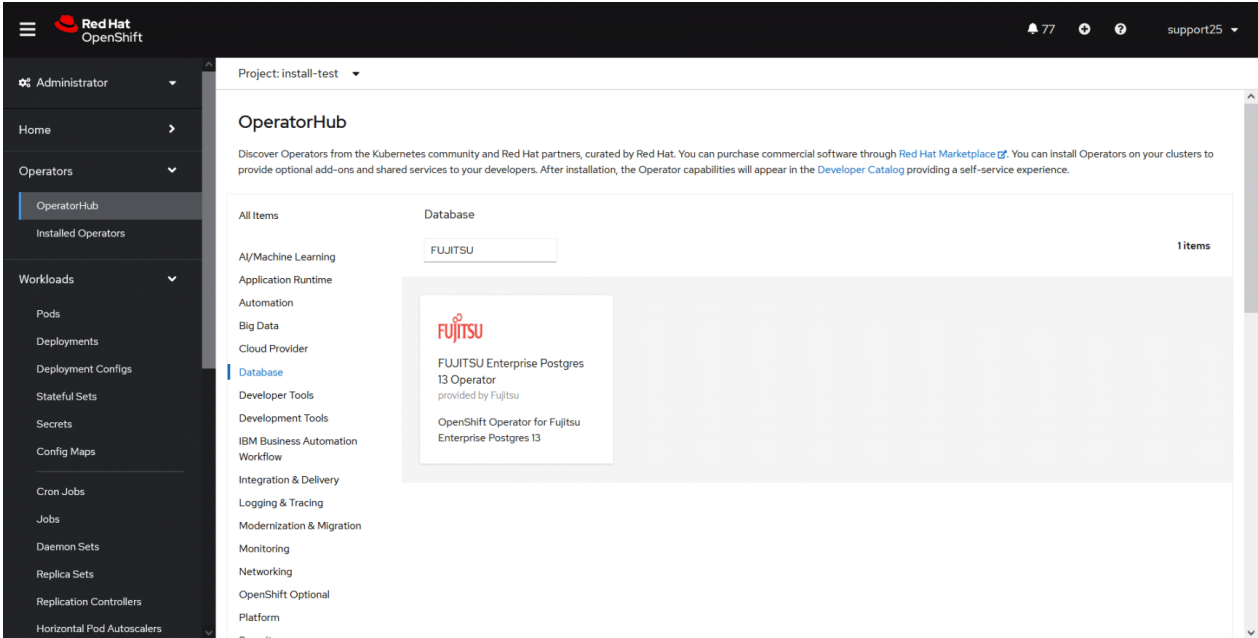
### Note

FEP13 Operator installation needs Prometheus to be pre-installed in the Openshift cluster.

## 3.2 Deploying Operator

Once operator is certified by RedHat, it is made available on OperatorHub on all RedHat OpenShift container platform.

On OpenShift platform, logon with credentials that has privileges to install operator. Click on OperatorHub on menu item under Operators and type filter keyword FUJITSU to find FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 Operator.



Click on FEP Operator to install operator. It will bring up details page with install button as below.



# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 Operator

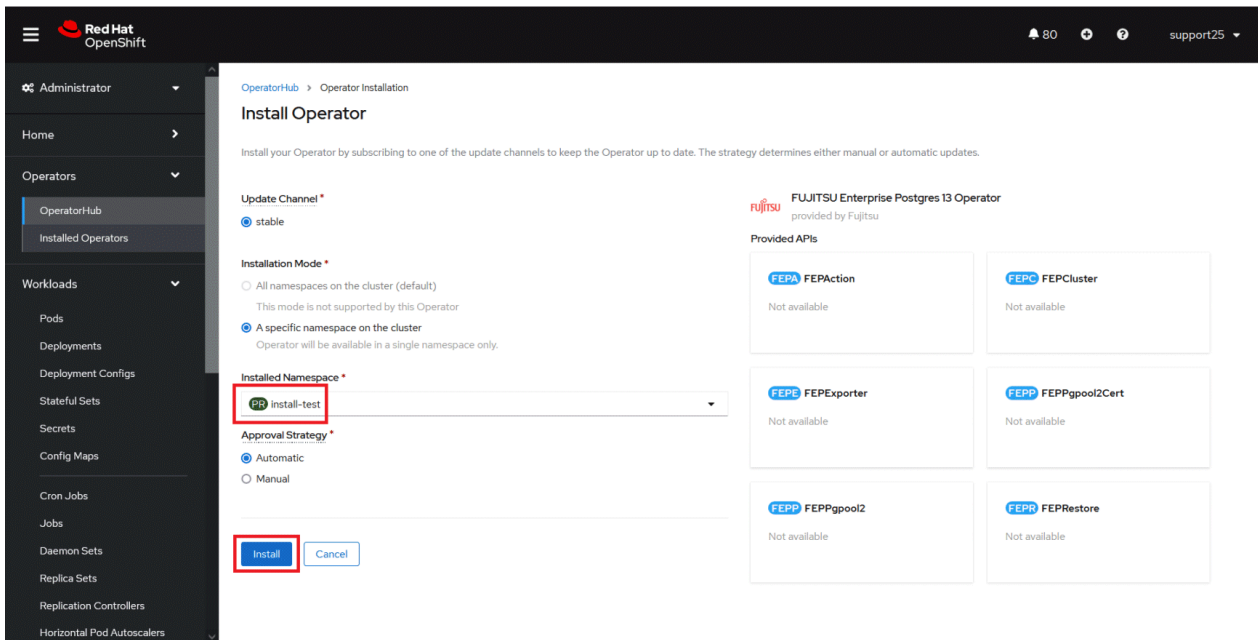


3.0.0 provided by Fujitsu

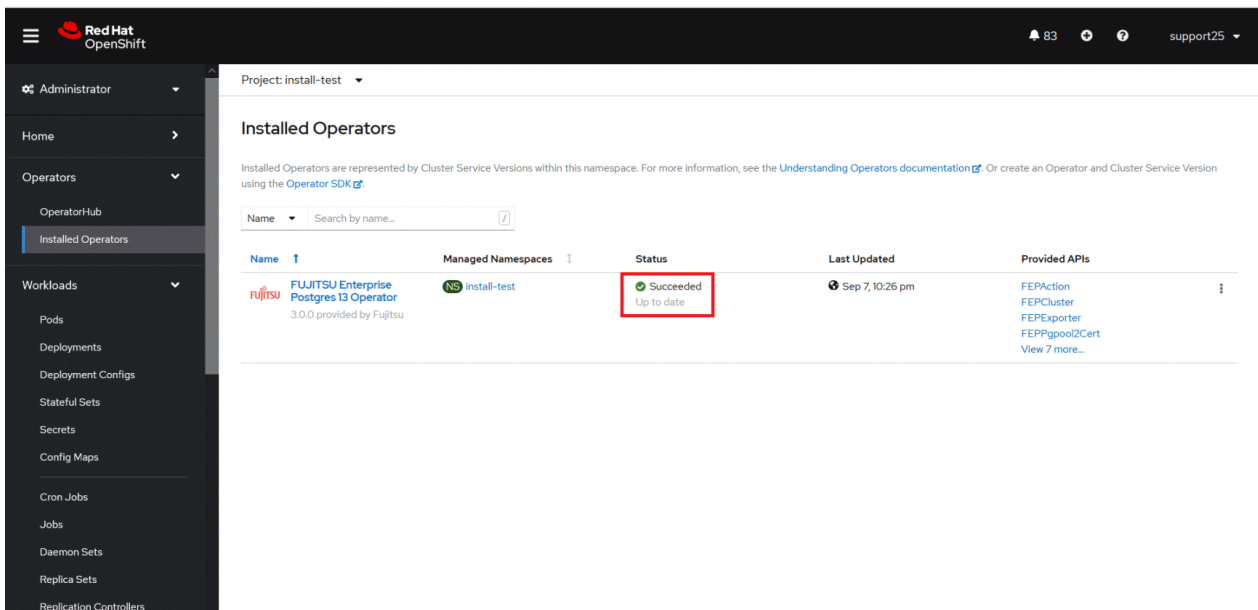


<b>Latest Version</b> 3.0.0	FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 delivers an enterprise-grade PostgreSQL on OpenShift Container Platform.
<b>Capability Level</b> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Basic Install <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Seamless Upgrades <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Full Lifecycle <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Deep Insights <input type="checkbox"/> Auto Pilot	<p>This solution provides the flexibility of a hybrid cloud solution while delivering an enhanced distribution of PostgreSQL to support enterprise-level workloads and provide improved deployment and management, availability, performance, data governance and security.</p> <p>Available as a multi-architecture container built for both amd64 and s390x.</p> <p>Use of the product is subject to Fujitsu evaluation license located at: <a href="https://www.fast.fujitsu.com/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-trial-version-software-evaluation-license-agreement">https://www.fast.fujitsu.com/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-trial-version-software-evaluation-license-agreement</a> and the license period is 90 days after the download</p>
<b>Provider Type</b> fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-registry-sp25	
<b>Provider</b> Fujitsu	
<b>Repository</b> N/A	
<b>Container Image</b> quay.io/fj-dbaas-dev/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-operator-st-fj:v2.2.0-registry-test	

Click on "Install" button, to bring up following screen to choose namespace and approval strategy. Select "A specific namespace in cluster" and choose desired namespace. Leave everything else to default and click install.



Wait still installation is complete and status changes to "Succeeded".



### 3.3 Implement Collaborative Monitoring Tools

There is a pre-requisite for running FEPEXporter.

- GAP(Grafana, AlertManager, Prometheus) stack is installed on host OpenShift cluster
- FEPCluster that needs to be scrapped is deployed and running properly
- FEPCluster has following setting postgresql.conf:
  - pg\_stats\_statements library pre-loaded
  - track\_activities and track\_counts are turned on



For Prometheus and AlertManager, use the monitoring stack preinstalled with OpenShift. Please refer to the following for deployment information.

(Refer: <https://docs.openshift.com/container-platform/4.6/monitoring/understanding-the-monitoring-stack.html>)

For Grafana, install and use the Grafana Operator provided by OperatorHub for x86. Grafana is not exposed by OperatorHub in s390x, so use Helm to build Grafana. Detailed instructions are available at the following site for your reference.

(Refer: <https://fast.fujitsu.com/knowledge-base/knowledge-articles-installationsetup/setting-up-grafana-on-ibm-linuxone>)

(Refer: <https://fast.fujitsu.com/knowledge-base/knowledge-articles-installationsetup/setting-up-grafana-on-amd64-ocp>)

Grafana comes pre-installed with OpenShift, but it is recommended to use Grafana published in OperatorHub to customize the dashboard and monitor FEP performance information.

# Chapter 4 Deployment Container

This chapter describes container deployment.

## Note

Each volume of a Pod created by a FEPCluster deployment is sized by default for the following operations:

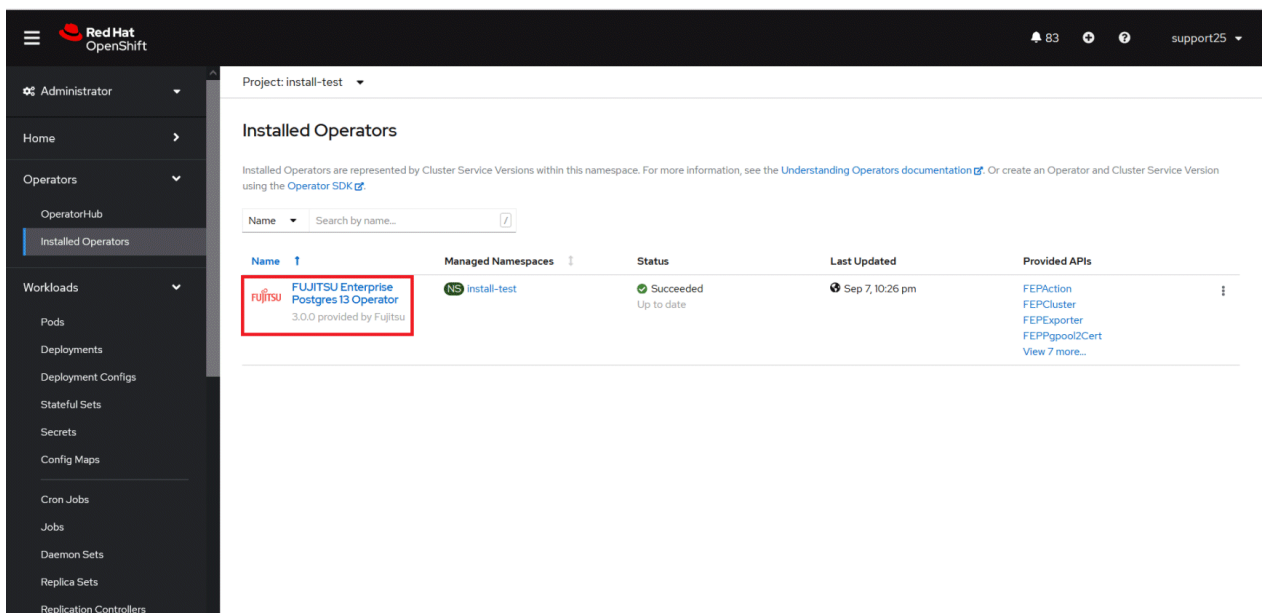
- Data size: 1 GB
- Daily update: about 50 MB





Refer to "[2.3.3 Configurable Volume per Cluster](#)" to design each volume size according to actual operation.

## 4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator

To deploy a FEPCluster in given namespace, follow these steps:

1. Under "Operators" menu item, click on "**Installed Operators**". You would see the installed FEP operator deployed in "[Chapter 3 Operator Installation](#)". Click on the name of operator.

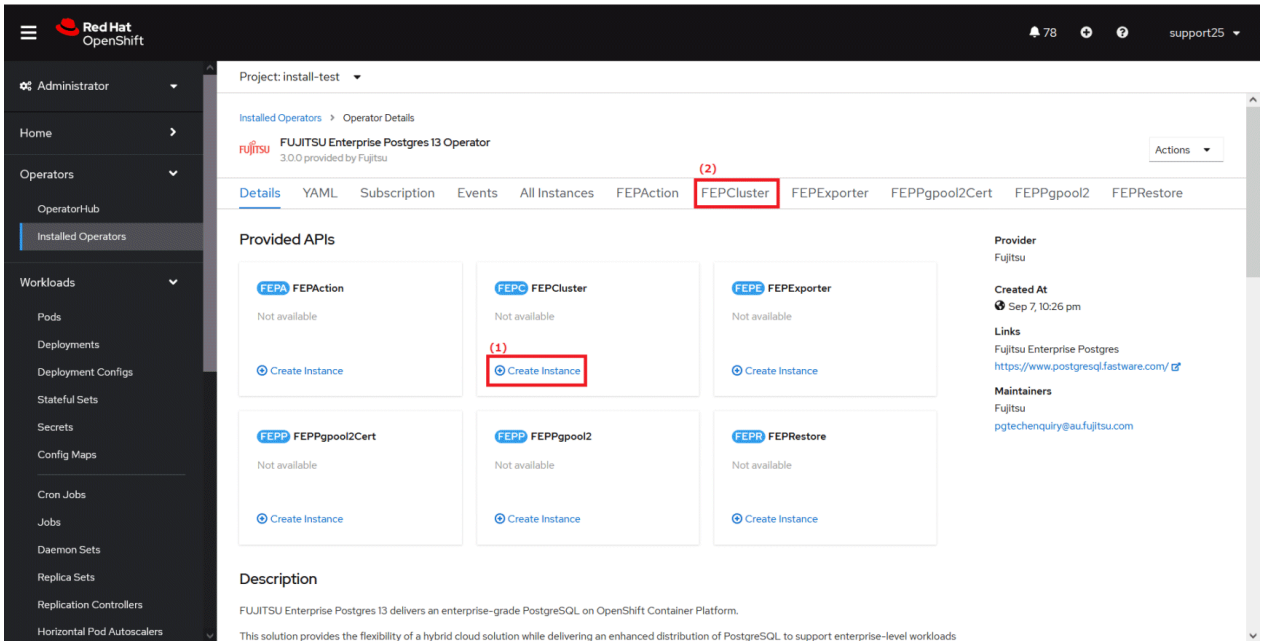


Name	Managed Namespaces	Status	Last Updated	Provided APIs
 FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 Operator 3.0.0 provided by Fujitsu	 install-test	 Succeeded Up to date	 Sep 7, 10:26 pm	FEPAction FEPCluster FEPExporter FEPppool2Cert <a href="#">View 7 more...</a>

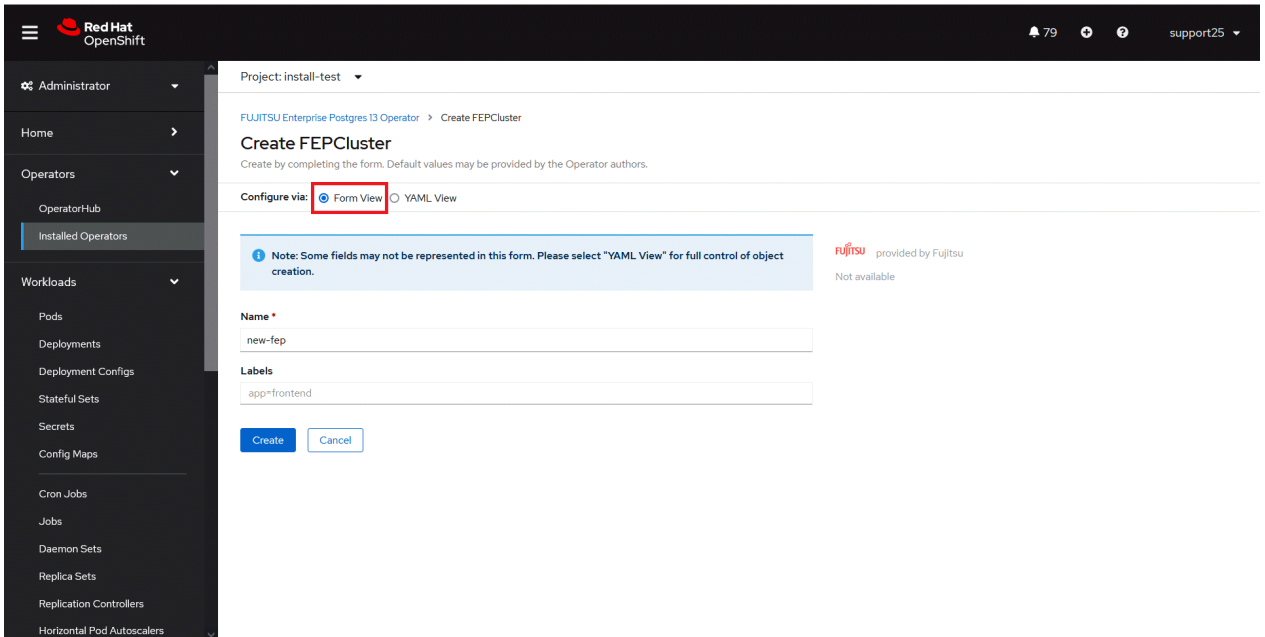
2. It will display a page with all CRs this operator supports. FEPCluster is the main CR and all others are child CR. We would create the main CR and all other CRs will be created automatically by Operator.  
To create Cluster CR, either
  - (1) Click on "**Create Instance**" under FEPCluster.

OR

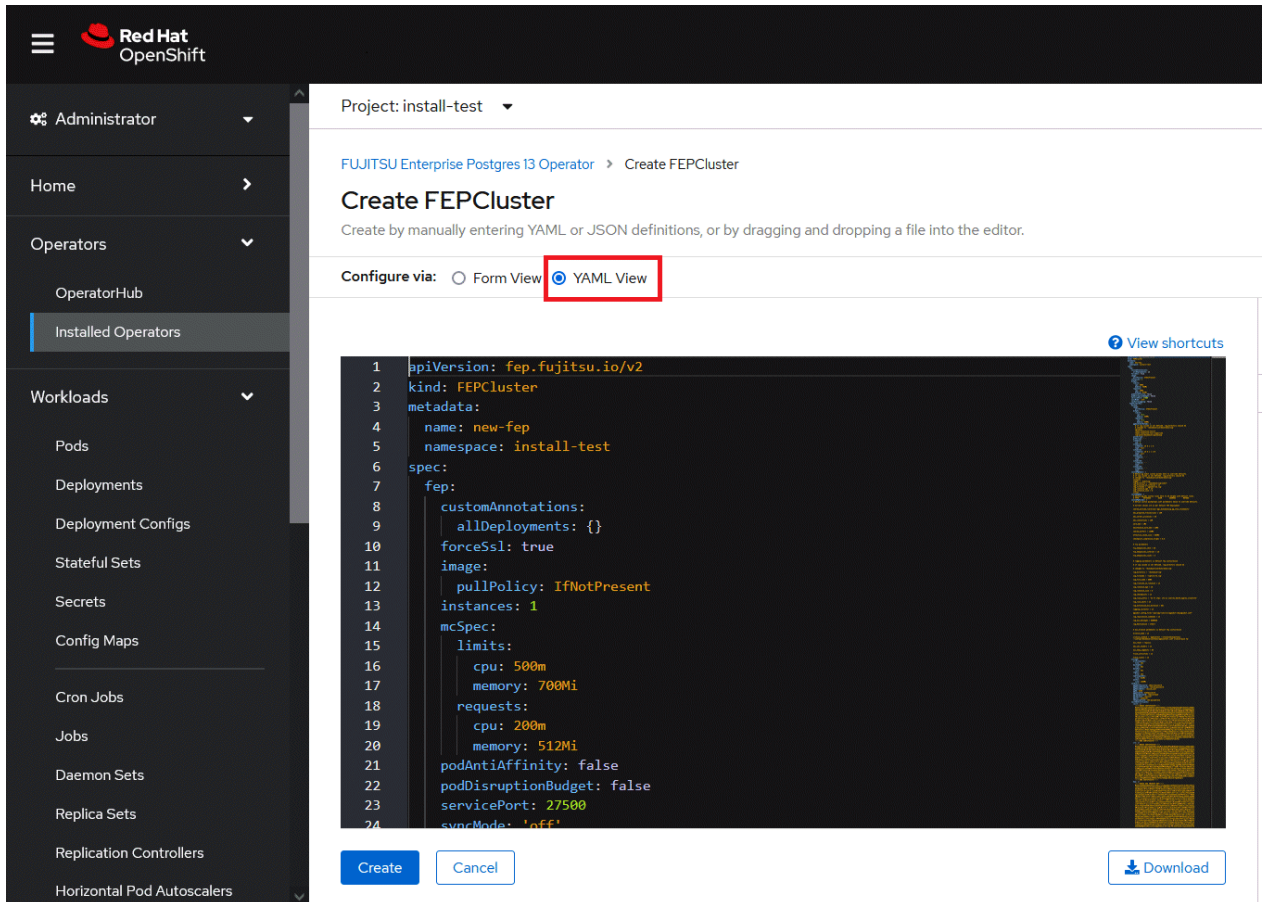
(2) Click on "FEPCluster" on top and then click on "Create FEPCluster" on the next page.



3. This will bring to "Create FEPCluster" page. Here you have two options to configure. The first one is Form View. At the moment, in Form View, one can change only the name of cluster being deployed. The default name is "new-fep". This name must be unique within a namespace.

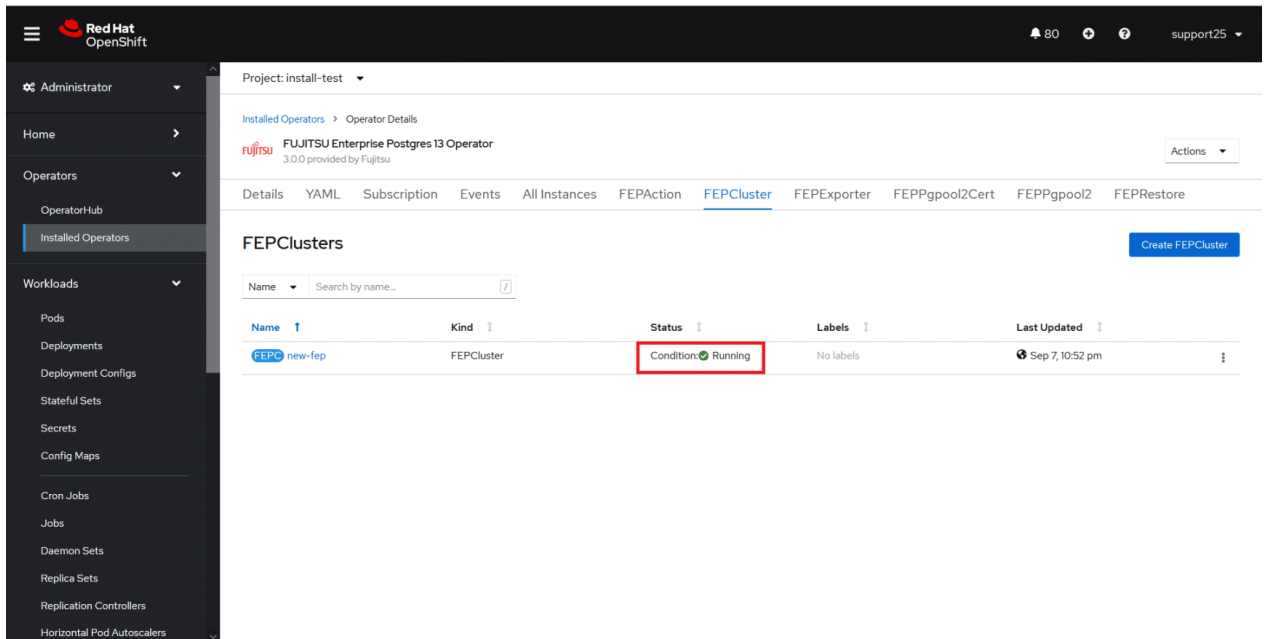


4. In YAML View, starting value of CR is visible and one can choose to modify parameters before creating CR. Refer to the Reference for details of parameters.

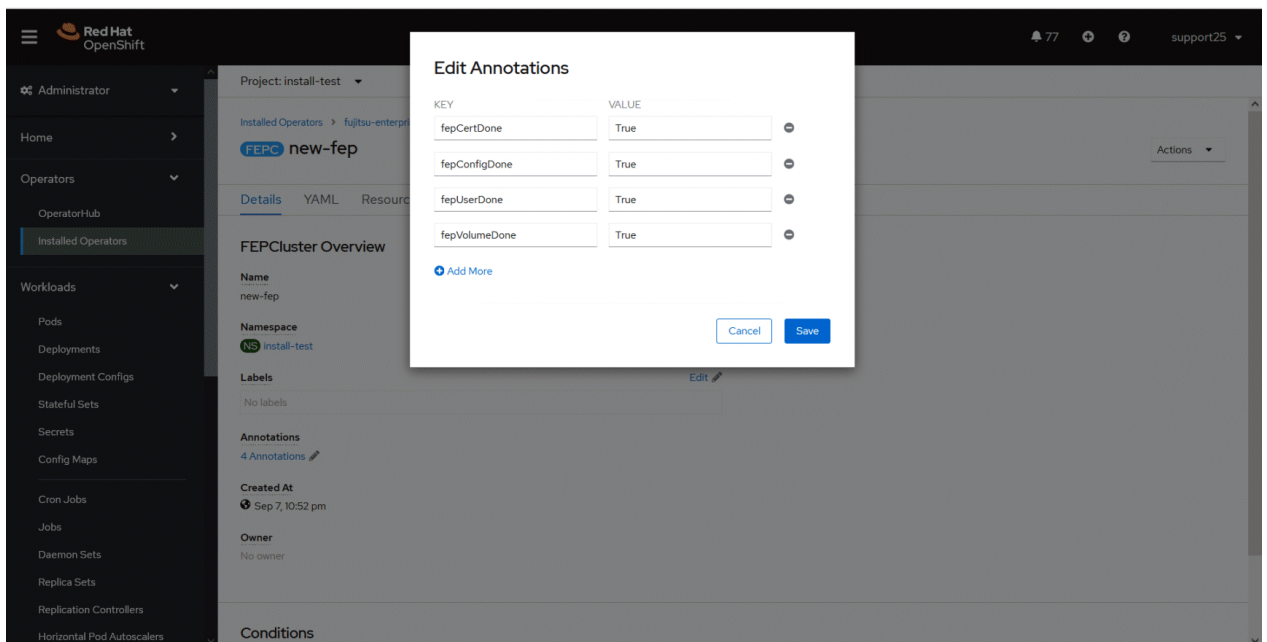


5. When "Create" is clicked on either of the two pages above, the operator creates FEPCluster CR, and there after one by one FEPBackup, FEPClusterConfig, FEPClusterVolume, FEPClusterUser, and FEPClusterCert child CRs are created automatically. The starting values for child CRs are taken from the "fepeclusterChildCrVal" section of the FEPCluster CR YAML file. Modifying value in FEPCluster "fepeclusterChildCrVal" section. Operator reflects changes from FEPCluster parent CR to respective child CRs. Only allowable

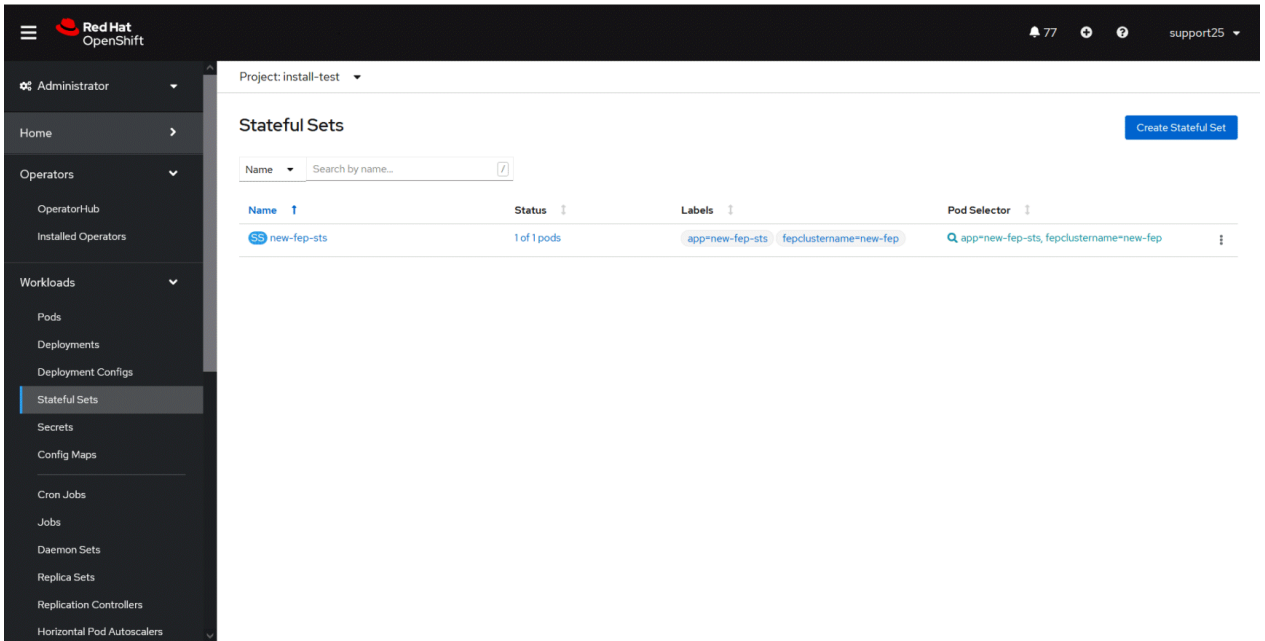
changes are reflected in child CRs. Child CRs are marked internal objects and hence will not be visible on the OCP console. However, you can check child CRs using command-line tools.



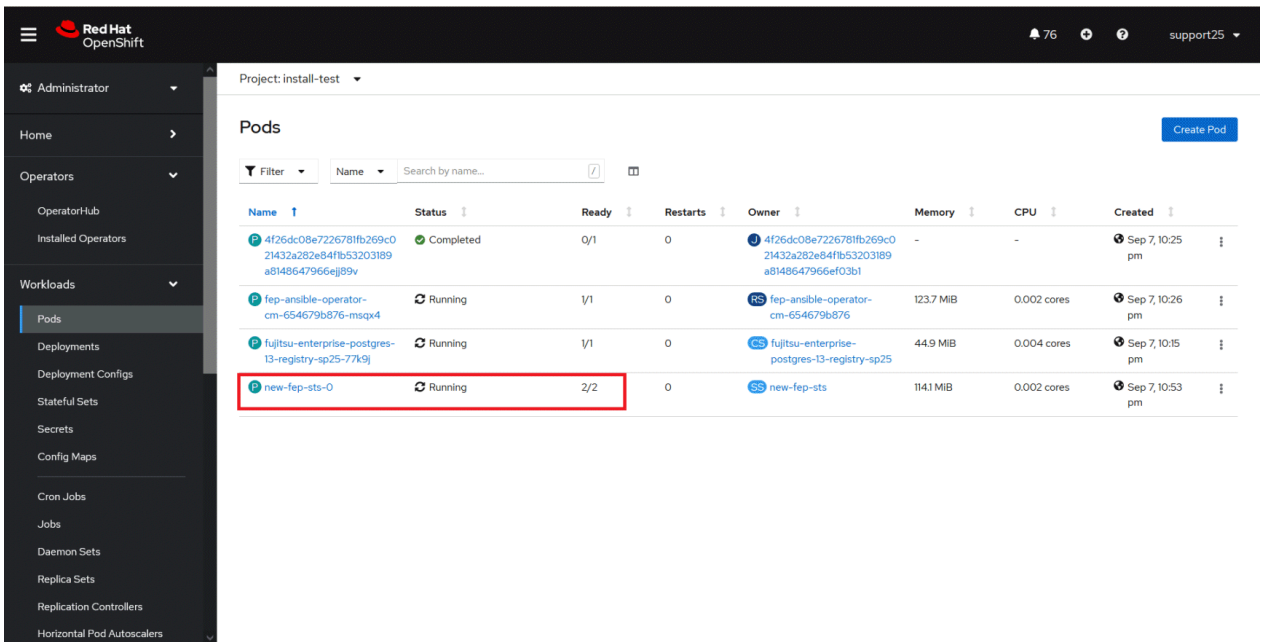
6. In FEPCluster CR, annotations are added to indicate that child CRs are created successfully and has initialised properly. It may take some time to complete.



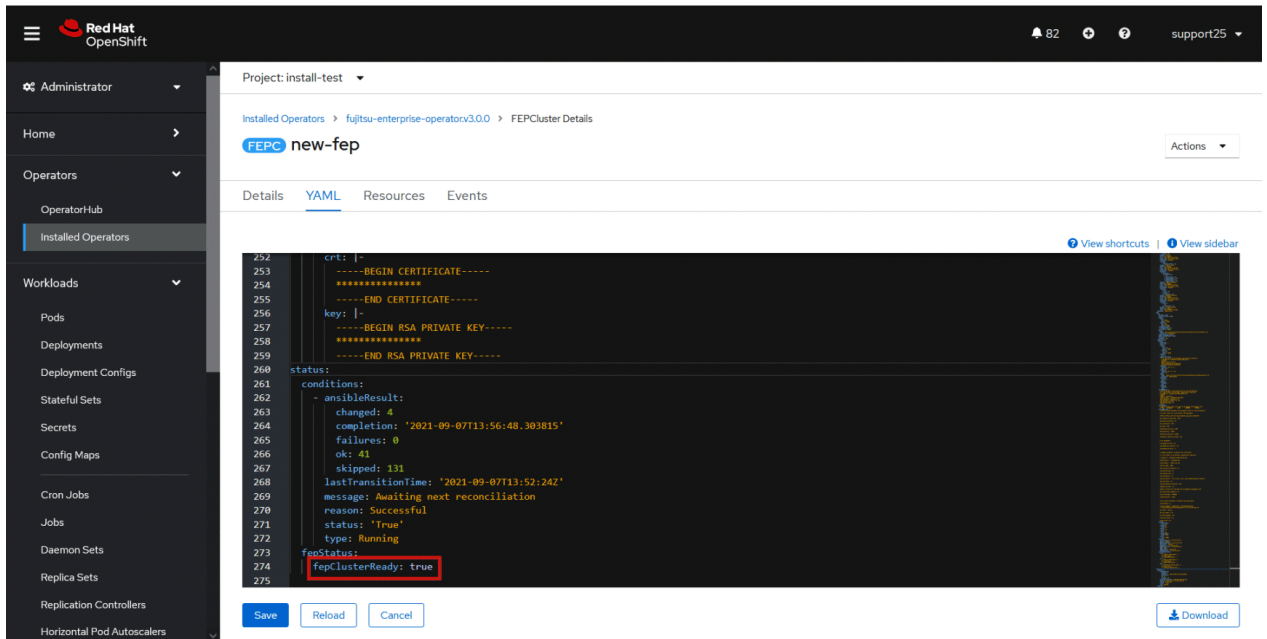
7. Once all four child CRs are marked done in annotations, operator creates StatefulSet for the cluster.



8. StatefulSet will start one FEP instance at one time and will wait it to be ready before starting next one.



- Once all instances of FEP servers are started, the operator marks a flag "fepClusterReady" under "status.fepStatus" section of CR to be **true**, indicating that FEPCluster is ready for use. Looking at YAML of FEPCluster CR, it would look like as below:



- Operator also masks the sensitive fields like passwords, passphrase, certificates and keys in FEPCluster fepChildCrVal and also in respective child CRs.

## 4.2 Deploy a Highly Available FEPCluster

In a highly available FEP cluster, load balancing is possible by distributing read queries to replica instances.

In addition, if the master instance fails, the user can switch to the replica instance immediately to localize the business interruption period.

In a highly available configuration, you can select the synchronization mode for the replica instance. Synchronous replication is recommended for systems that cannot tolerate data loss in the event of a master instance failure.

Because multiple instances are created in a highly available configuration, licenses are required for each.

To deploy a highly available FEPCluster in given namespace, follow these steps:

### [Prerequisites]

If the FEP cluster is running in HA mode, the backup and archive WAL volumes must be configured with shared storage (NFS, etc.) that supports ReadWriteMany. See the Openshift documentation for instructions on setting up shared storage. Also, the reference procedure is described in "[Appendix C Utilize Shared Storage](#)", so please check if necessary.

If you do not have shared storage, you can remove the backup section and the backup and archive volume sections to disable the backup feature and deploy the FEP cluster.

- It is the same as the procedure from step 1 to step 3 in "[4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator](#)".

2. Instead of step 4 in "4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator", change to the YAML view and specify '3' for the "instances" parameter of "fe" in "spec". Specify the storage class for the prepared shared storage for the backup and archive WAL volumes.

The screenshot shows the Red Hat OpenShift console interface. On the left is a navigation sidebar with categories like Administrator, Home, Operators, Workloads, and Pods. The main content area is titled 'Project: install-test' and 'FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 Operator > Create FEPCluster'. Below the title, it says 'Create by manually entering YAML or JSON definitions, or by dragging and dropping a file into the editor.' There are two radio buttons for configuration: 'Form View' (unselected) and 'YAML View' (selected). A 'View shortcuts' link is visible in the top right of the editor area. The YAML code is displayed in a dark-themed editor, with the line 'instances: '3'' highlighted by a red box. The code includes fields for apiVersion, kind, metadata, spec, fe, customAnnotations, forceSsl, image, pullPolicy, limits, requests, podAntiAffinity, podDisruptionBudget, servicePort, and syncMode. At the bottom of the editor are 'Create', 'Cancel', and 'Download' buttons.

```

1  apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v2
2  kind: FEPCluster
3  metadata:
4    name: new-fep
5    namespace: install-test
6  spec:
7    fe:
8      customAnnotations:
9        allDeployments: {}
10     forceSsl: true
11     image:
12     pullPolicy: IfNotPresent
13     instances: '3'
14     mcSpec:
15       limits:
16         cpu: 500m
17         memory: 700Mi
18       requests:
19         cpu: 200m
20         memory: 512Mi
21     podAntiAffinity: false
22     podDisruptionBudget: false
23     servicePort: 27500
24     syncMode: 'off'

```

3. It is the same as the procedure from step 5 to step 10 in "4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator".
4. Three pods deployed and ready for a highly available FEPCluster.

The screenshot shows the Red Hat OpenShift console 'Pods' page for the 'Project: gui-install' namespace. The page includes a 'Filter' dropdown, a 'Label' dropdown, and a search box. A label 'demongui' is selected. Below the filters is a table of pods. The table has columns for Name, Status, Ready, Restarts, Owner, Memory, CPU, and Created. Three pods are listed and highlighted with a red box: 'new-fep-sts-0', 'new-fep-sts-1', and 'new-fep-sts-2'. All three are in a 'Running' state with a 'Ready' count of 2/2 and 0 restarts. The 'Owner' column shows they are owned by 'new-fep-sts'. The 'Created' column shows they were created on April 14, 2023, at various times.

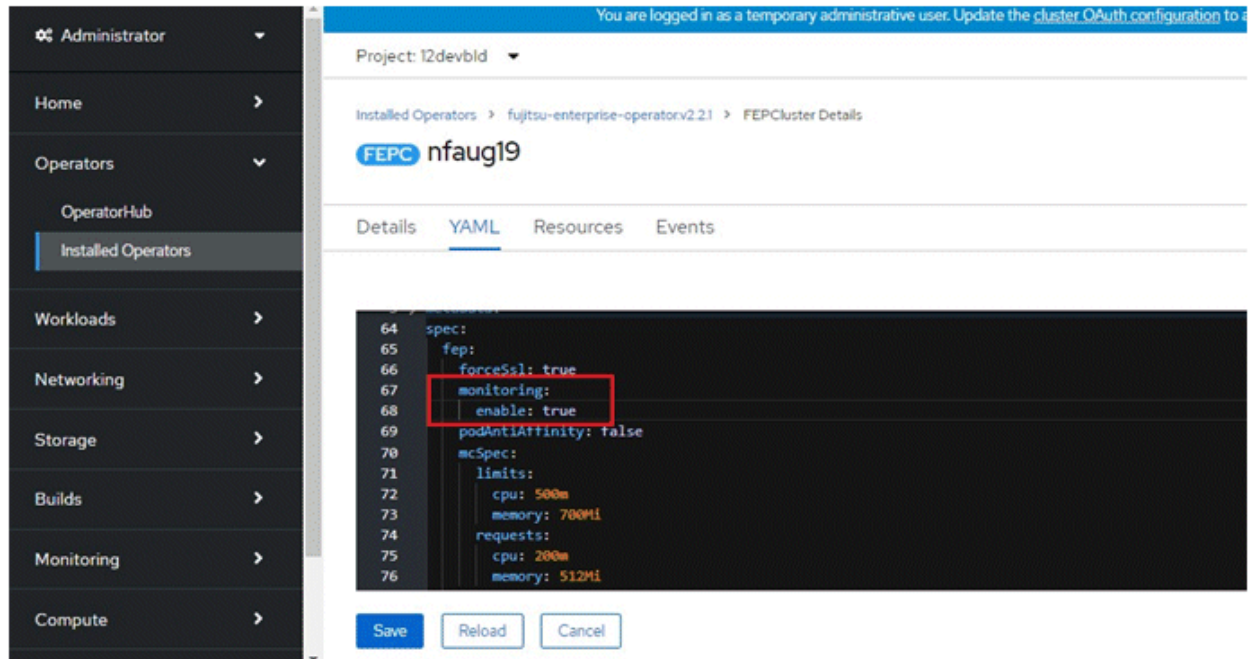
Name	Status	Ready	Restarts	Owner	Memory	CPU	Created
fep-ansible-operator-674755887d-2tsgm	Running	1/1	0	fep-ansible-operator-674755887d	186.9 MiB	0.228 cores	Apr 14, 11:46 am
new-fep-sts-0	Running	2/2	0	new-fep-sts	197.7 MiB	0.006 cores	Apr 14, 2:59 pm
new-fep-sts-1	Running	2/2	0	new-fep-sts	81.2 MiB	0.005 cores	Apr 14, 3:01 pm
new-fep-sts-2	Running	2/2	0	new-fep-sts	74.5 MiB	0.010 cores	6 minutes ago



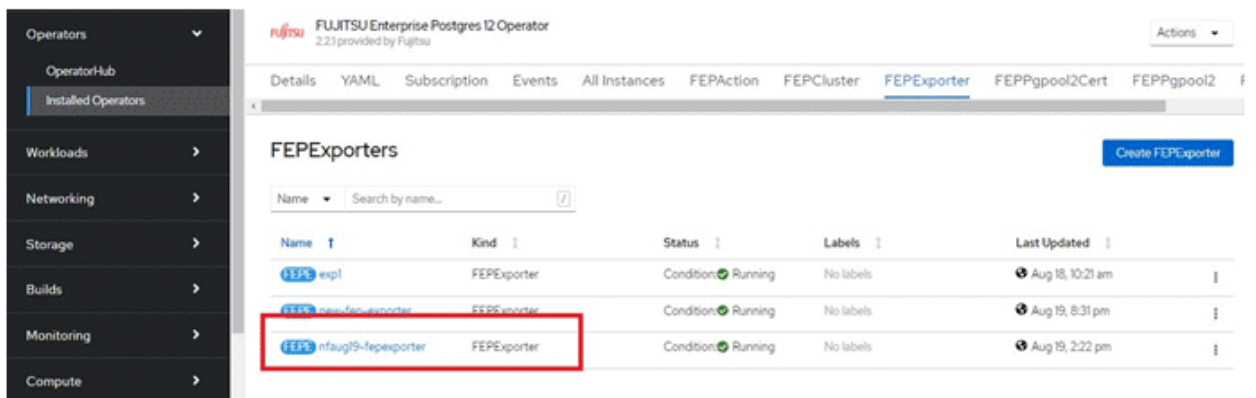
## 4.3 Deploying FEPEXporter

To deploy a FEPEXporter, follow these steps:

1. In order to deploy FEPEXporter managed by Operator, it is as easy as setting `fep.monitoring.enable` to `true` in FEPCluster CR at the time of deployment.



2. FEPEXporter will be created automatically under the name `<cluster-name>-fepexporter`. And it will list show all the database with statistics of specified FEPCluster.



3. FEPEXporter spawned by FEP Operator in aforementioned way will scrape metrics by default from the Master and standby instances and make it available to Prometheus.
4. User can configure MTLS to be used for HTTP endpoint used by Prometheus for metrics scraping as well as connection from FEPEXporter to database.
  - a. If `pgMetricsUser`, `pgMetricsPassword` and `pgMetricsUserTls` is defined in FEPCluster; FEPEXporter will hence use these for securing connection to the postgres instances. In absence of these parameters, FEPEXporter will use `pgAdminUser` (i.e. super user).
  - b. User can configure `Prometheus.tls` and `FEPEXporter.tls` to ensure that metrics end point (`/metrics`) by FEPEXporter is also used with MTLS ( Refer to "FEPEXporter Custom Resource" in the Reference for details of fields)
5. User can also configure basic authentication by specifying a secret that contains username & password. (Refer to "FEPEXporter Custom Resource" in the Reference for details of fields)

- Now user can see scrape FEPEXporter specific metrics on Openshift Platform in monitoring section area using PROMQL to specify a metrics of interest

pg_exporter_scrapes_total	prometheus-fep-exporter	new-fep-exporter-http	10.131.0.45:9187	new-fep-exporter-service	fepexporter-dev	new-fep-exporter-deployment-67f6764db8-pf9qf	openshift-user-workload-monitoring/user-workload	new-fep-exporter-service
pg_exporter_scrapes_total	prometheus-fep-exporter	new-fep-exporter-http	10.131.2.133:9187	new-fep-exporter-service	l2devblid	new-fep-exporter-deployment-7569c8f8b7-96vht	openshift-user-workload-monitoring/user-workload	new-fep-exporter-service
pg_exporter_scrapes_total	prometheus-fep-exporter	nf18a12-fepexporter-http	10.129.3.28:9187	nf18a12-fepexporter-service	a-reg-install	nf18a12-fepexporter-deployment-65db656d7-p756c	openshift-user-workload-monitoring/user-workload	nf18a12-fepexporter-service
pg_exporter_scrapes_total	prometheus-fep-exporter	nf19aug-fepexporter-http	10.129.2.309:9187	nf19aug-fepexporter-service	aashish-test	nf19aug-fepexporter-deployment-68d65685f7-2zst4	openshift-user-workload-monitoring/user-workload	nf19aug-fepexporter-service
pg_exporter_scrapes_total	prometheus-fep-exporter	nf19g9-fepexporter-http	10.129.2.352:9187	nf19g9-fepexporter-service	l2devblid	nf19g9-fepexporter-deployment-f8db9f7cf-89wm7	openshift-user-workload-monitoring/user-workload	nf19g9-fepexporter-service

## Note

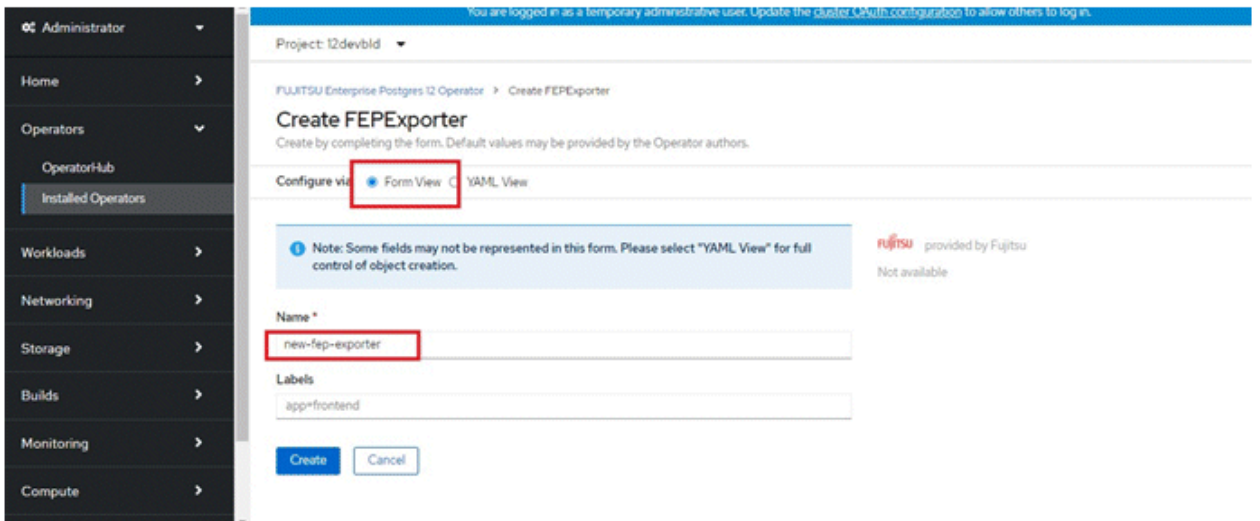
- User can set `fep.monitoring.enable` to true or false on an already instantiated cluster as well to achieve desired results
- `pgMetricsUser` can be defined later on a running FEPCluster with monitoring enabled and can force FEPEXporter to use `pgMetricsUser` by mere restarting it ( refer `restartRequired` ). However, MTLS can not be configured in this case and user is expected to grant specific permission to `pgMetricsUser` for all the database objects which are expected to be use while scraping information.
- For MTLS to be forced, ensure `usePodName` and `pg_hba.conf` is been set appropriately.
- FEPEXporter default metrics expects few following in `postgres.conf`
  - `pg_stats_statements` library pre-loaded
  - `track_activities` and `track_counts` are turned on
  - Monitoring user needs permission on `pg_stat_*` views
- FEPEXporter pod specification related to CPU memory can be changed. After changing resources specification, set `restartRequired` flag to true. FEPEXporter will be restarted with new specifications
- FEP Monitoring is closely integrated with Prometheus available on platform. User should ensure that on openshift platform monitoring is enabled for user-defined projects ( Refer: <https://docs.openshift.com/container-platform/4.6/monitoring/enabling-monitoring-for-user-defined-projects.html> ). For platforms other than openshift, ensure Prometheus is installed before deployment of FEP operator

## 4.4 FEPEXporter in Standalone Mode

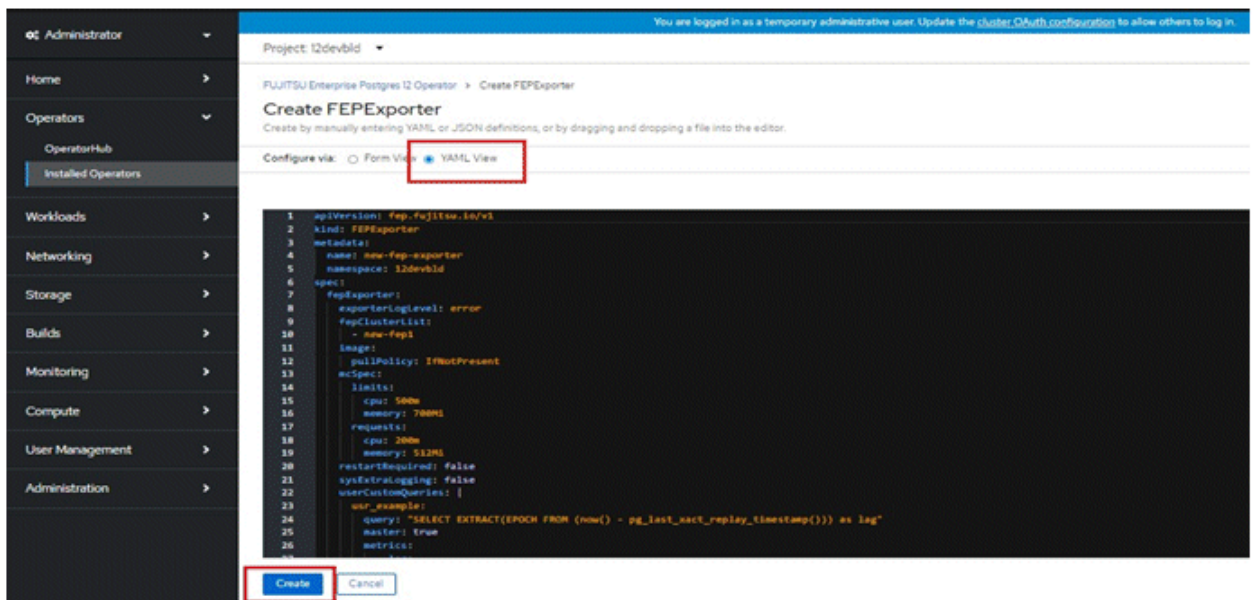
FEPEXporter is an independent CR; hence it does not necessarily depend on main FEPCluster CR. To deploy a FEPEXporter in given namespace follow the below step.

- To create FEPEXporter CR, either
  - Click on "**Create Instance**" under FEPEXporter.
  - OR
  - Click on "**FEPEXporter**" on top and then click on "**Create FEPEXporter**" on the next page.
- In Form View, one can change only the name of cluster being deployed. The default name is "new-fep-exporter". This name must be unique within a namespace.

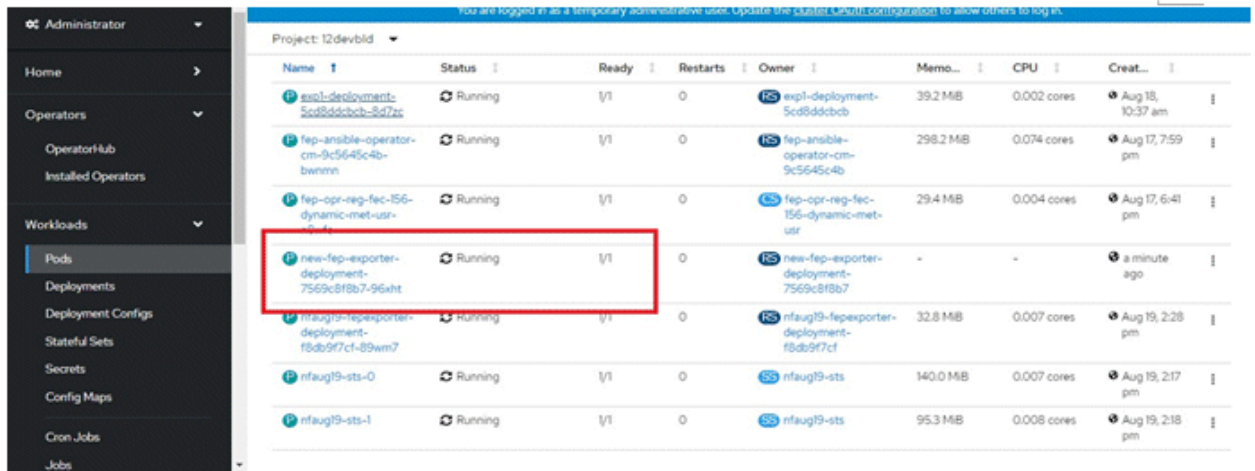
- FEPEXporter scrapes metrics for FEPCluster within same namespace.



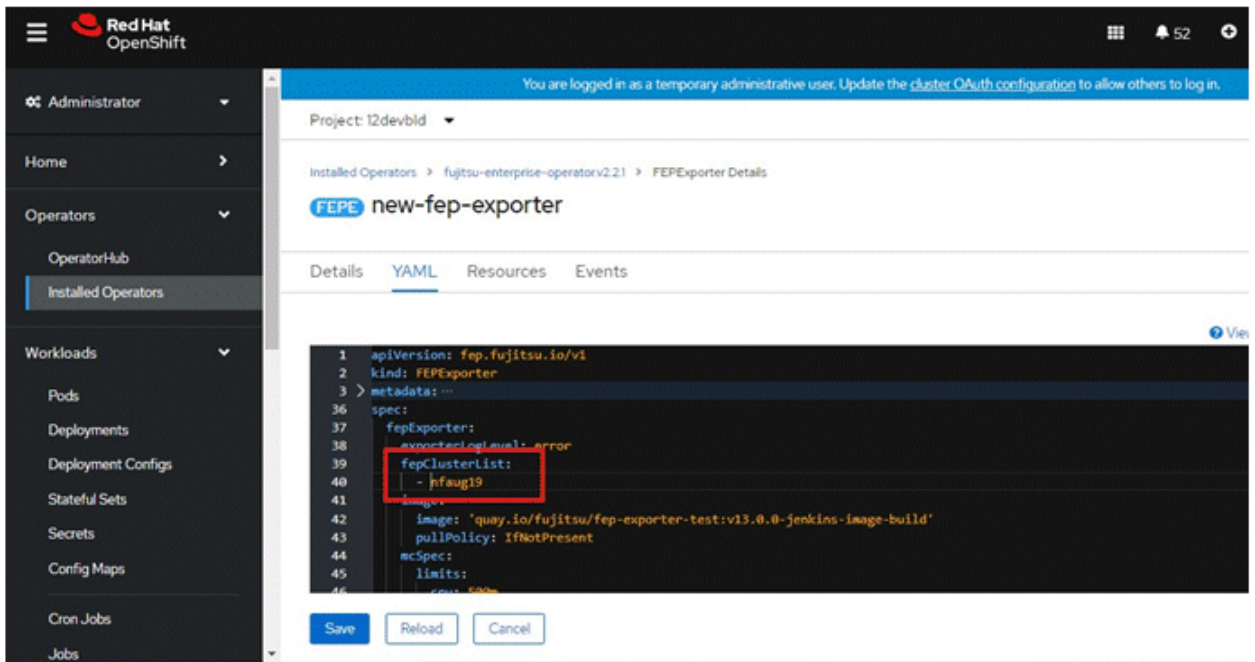
- In YAML View, starting value of FEPEXporter CR is visible and one can choose to modify parameters before creating CR. Refer to the Reference for details of parameters.



- When clicked on the "Create" button. It will create FEPEXporter pod with other resource like secret, service, configmap for data source queries.



- Targeting the name of FEPEXporter in FEPEXporter cluster list. Before targeting cluster, Check the FEPEXporter status and FEPEXporter StatefulSet are in running condition.



- It will recreate FEPEXporter pod with a new dataresource secret. It will list down all the database with statistics of specified FEPEXporter in monitoring section.
- If fepClusterList has more than one clusters listed, current exporter will collect metrics for all of those listed.
- Multiple FEPEXporters can be deployed within one namespace with their own cluster list to collect metrics from.

## 4.5 Configuration FEP to Perform MTLs

All three traffic can be secured by using TLS connection protected by certificates:

- Postgres traffic from Client Application to FEPEXporter
- Patroni RESTAPI within FEPEXporter
- Postgres traffic within FEPEXporter (e.g. replication, rewind)

Here, we provide two methods to create certificates for securing the TLS connection and provide mutual authentication. The first method is to create and renew certificate manually. The second method is to use CertManager to create an automatically renew certificate.

### Note

The following considerations apply to client connections to a database cluster in an MTLS configuration:.

- Distribute the Root certificate for server (validation) that you specified when you created the MTLS database cluster to the client machines.
- Create and use a new client certificate.
- If the server root certificate and the client root certificate are different, a server-side configuration update is required.

## 4.5.1 Manual Certificate Management

---

### Overview of Procedures

The procedures to enable MTLS communication are listed below:

1. Create a self signed certificate as CA
2. Create Configmap to store CA certificate
3. Create a password for protecting FEP Server private key (optional)
4. Create FEP Server private key
5. Create FEP Server certificate signing request
6. Create FEP Server certificate signed by CA
7. Create TLS Secret to store FEP Server certificate and key
8. Create private key for Patroni
9. Create certificate signing request for Patroni
10. Create certificate signed by CA for Patroni
11. Create TLS secret to store Patroni certificate and key
12. Create private key for "postgres" user client certificate
13. Create certificate signing request for "postgres" user client certificate
14. Create client certificate for "postgres" user
15. Create TLS secret to store "postgres" certificate and key
16. Repeat step 12-15 for "repluser" and "rewinduser"

### Note

The information in the manual is only an example, and in operation, use a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA) that the user can trust.

### Creating a CA Certificate

1. Create a self signed certificate as CA

```
openssl genrsa -aes256 -out myca.key 4096
Generating RSA private key, 4096 bit long modulus (2 primes)
```

```

.....++++
.....++++
e is 65537 (0x010001)
Enter pass phrase for myca.key: 0okm9ijn8uhb7ygv
Verifying - Enter pass phrase for myca.key: 0okm9ijn8uhb7ygv

cat << EOF > ca.cnf
[req]
distinguished_name=req_distinguished_name
x509_extensions=v3_ca
[v3_ca]
basicConstraints = critical, CA:true
keyUsage=critical,keyCertSign,digitalSignature,cRLSign
[req_distinguished_name]
commonName=Common Name
EOF

openssl req -x509 -new -nodes -key myca.key -days 3650 -out myca.pem -subj "/O=My Organization/
OU=CA /CN=My Organization Certificate Authority" -config ca.cnf
Enter pass phrase for myca.key: 0okm9ijn8uhb7ygv

```

## 2. Create Configmap to store CA certificate

```
oc create configmap cacert --from-file=ca.crt=myca.pem -n my-namespace
```

## 3. Create a password for protecting FEP Server private key (optional)

```
oc create secret generic mydb-fep-private-key-password --from-literal=keypassword=abcdefghijklk -n
my-namespace
```

## Creating a Server Certificate

### 4. Create FEP Server private key

```
openssl genrsa -aes256 -out fep.key 2048
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus
.....+++
.....+++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
Enter pass phrase for fep.key: abcdefghijk
Verifying - Enter pass phrase for fep.key: abcdefghijk

```

### 5. Create FEP Server certificate signing request

```
cat << EOF > san.cnf
[SAN]
subjectAltName = @alt_names
[alt_names]
DNS.1 = *.my-namespace.pod
DNS.2 = *.my-namespace.pod.cluster.local
DNS.3 = mydb-primary-svc
DNS.4 = mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace
DNS.5 = mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace.svc
DNS.6 = mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace.svc.cluster.local
DNS.7 = mydb-replica-svc
DNS.8 = mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace
DNS.9 = mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace.svc
DNS.10 = mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace.svc.cluster.local

```

```
EOF
```

```
openssl req -new -key fep.key -out fep.csr -subj "/CN=mydb-headless-svc" -reqexts SAN -config  
<(cat /etc/pki/tls/openssl.cnf <(cat san.cnf)) # all in one line
```

## Note

The cluster name and namespace must be changed appropriately.

If you are connecting from outside the OCP cluster, you must also include the host name used for that connection.

### 6. Create FEP Server certificate signed by CA

```
openssl x509 -req -in fep.csr -CA myca.pem -CAkey myca.key -out fep.pem -days 365 -extfile  
<(cat /etc/pki/tls/openssl.cnf <(cat san.cnf)) -extensions SAN -CAcreateserial # all in one line  
Signature ok  
subject=/CN=mydb-headless-svc  
Getting CA Private Key  
Enter pass phrase for myca.key: 0okm9ijn8uhb7ygv
```

### 7. Create TLS Secret to store FEP Server certificate and key

```
oc create secret generic mydb-fep-cert --from-file=tls.crt=fep.pem --from-file=tls.key=fep.key -n  
my-namespace
```

### 8. Create private key for Patroni

At the moment, FEP container does not support password protected private key for Patroni.

```
openssl genrsa -out patroni.key 2048  
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus  
.....+++  
.....+++  
e is 65537 (0x10001)
```

### 9. Create certificate signing request for Patroni

```
cat << EOF > san.cnf  
[SAN]  
subjectAltName = @alt_names  
[alt_names]  
DNS.1 = *.my-namespace.pod  
DNS.2 = *.my-namespace.pod.cluster.local  
DNS.3 = mydb-primary-svc  
DNS.4 = mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace  
DNS.5 = mydb-replica-svc  
DNS.6 = mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace  
DNS.7 = mydb-headless-svc  
DNS.8 = mydb-headless-svc.my-namespace  
EOF  
  
openssl req -new -key patroni.key -out patroni.csr -subj "/CN=mydb-headless-svc" -reqexts SAN -  
config <(cat /etc/pki/tls/openssl.cnf <(cat san.cnf)) # all in one line
```

## Note

The cluster name and namespace must be changed appropriately.

If you are connecting from outside the OCP cluster, you must also include the host name used for that connection.

### 10. Create certificate signed by CA for Patroni

```
openssl x509 -req -in patroni.csr -CA myca.pem -CAkey myca.key -out patroni.pem -days 365 -extfile
<(cat /etc/pki/tls/openssl.cnf <(cat san.cnf)) -extensions SAN -CAcreateserial # all in one line
Signature ok
subject=/CN=mydb-headless-svc
Getting CA Private Key
Enter pass phrase for myca.key: 0okm9ijn8uhb7ygv
```

### 11. Create TLS secret to store Patroni certificate and key

```
oc create secret tls mydb-patroni-cert --cert=patroni.pem --key=patroni.key -n my-namespace
```

## Creating a User Certificate

### 12. Create private key for "postgres" user client certificate

At the moment, SQL client inside FEP server container does not support password protected certificate.

```
openssl genrsa -out postgres.key 2048
Generating RSA private key, 2048 bit long modulus
.....+++
.....+++
e is 65537 (0x10001)
```

### 13. Create certificate signing request for "postgres" user client certificate

```
openssl req -new -key postgres.key -out postgres.csr -subj "/CN=postgres"
```

### 14. Create client certificate for "postgres" user

```
openssl x509 -req -in postgres.csr -CA myca.pem -CAkey myca.key -out postgres.pem -days 365
```

### 15. Create TLS secret to store "postgres" certificate and key

```
oc create secret tls mydb-postgres-cert --cert=postgres.pem --key=postgres.key -n my-namespace
```

### 16. Repeat step 12-15 for "repluser" and "rewinduser"

## 4.5.2 Automatic Certificate Management

There are many Certificate Management tools available in the public. In this example, we will use cert-manager for the purpose.

## Note

Note that certificates created in this example are not password protected.



## Install cert-manager

```
oc create namespace cert-manager

oc apply -f https://github.com/jetstack/cert-manager/releases/download/v1.3.0/cert-manager.yaml
```

## Create a Self Signed Issuer (This can be namespace specific or cluster wise)

This example creates an Issuer, that can create self signed certificate, in namespace my-namespace.

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Issuer
metadata:
  name: selfsigned-issuer
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  selfSigned: {}
EOF
```

## Create a Self Signed CA certificate using selfsigned-issuer

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Certificate
metadata:
  name: cacert
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  subject:
    organizations:
      - My Organization
    organizationalUnits:
      - CA
  commonName: "My Organization Certificate Authority"
  duration: 87600h
  isCA: true
  secretName: cacert
  issuerRef:
    name: selfsigned-issuer
EOF
```

The above command will create a self signed Root certificate and private key stored in the Kubernetes secret "cacert" in namespace my-namespace.

## Create a CA Issuer with above certificate

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Issuer
metadata:
  name: ca-issuer
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  ca:
    secretName: cacert
EOF
```

## Create FEP Server certificate using above CA Issuer

Assuming FEPCluster name is mydb in namespace my-namespace.

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Certificate
metadata:
  name: mydb-fep-cert
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  subject:
    commonName: "mydb-headless-svc"
    dnsNames:
    - "*.my-namespace.pod"
    - "*.my-namespace.pod.cluster.local"
    - "mydb-primary-svc"
    - "mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace"
    - "mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace.svc"
    - "mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace.svc.cluster.local"
    - "mydb-replica-svc"
    - "mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace"
    - "mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace.svc"
    - "mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace.svc.cluster.local"
  duration: 8760h
  usages:
  - server auth
  secretName: mydb-fep-cert
  issuerRef:
    name: ca-issuer
EOF
```

## Create Patroni certificate using above CA Issuer

Assuming FEPCluster name is mydb in namespace my-namespace.

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Certificate
metadata:
  name: mydb-patroni-cert
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  subject:
    commonName: "mydb-headless-svc"
    dnsNames:
    - "*.my-namespace.pod"
    - "*.my-namespace.pod.cluster.local"
    - "*.mydb-primary-svc"
    - "*.mydb-primary-svc.my-namespace"
    - "*.mydb-replica-svc"
    - "*.mydb-replica-svc.my-namespace"
  duration: 8760h
  usages:
  - server auth
  secretName: mydb-patroni-cert
  issuerRef:
    name: ca-issuer
EOF
```

### Create postgres user client certificate

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Certificate
metadata:
  name: mydb-postgres-cert
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  subject:
    commonName: "postgres"
    duration: 8760h
  usages:
    - client auth
  secretName: mydb-postgres-cert
  issuerRef:
    name: ca-issuer
EOF
```

### Create repluser user client certificate

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Certificate
metadata:
  name: mydb-repluser-cert
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  subject:
    commonName: "repluser"
    duration: 8760h
  usages:
    - client auth
  secretName: mydb-repluser-cert
  issuerRef:
    name: ca-issuer
EOF
```

### Create rewinduser user client certificate

```
cat << EOF | oc apply -f -
apiVersion: cert-manager.io/v1
kind: Certificate
metadata:
  name: mydb-rewinduser-cert
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  subject:
    commonName: "rewinduser"
    duration: 8760h
  usages:
    - client auth
  secretName: mydb-rewinduser-cert
  issuerRef:
    name: ca-issuer
EOF
```

## 4.5.3 Deploy FEPCluster with MTLS support

---

## Deploy FEPCluster with manual certificate management

Use the following yaml as an example to deploy a FEPCluster with Manual Certificate Management. MTLS related parameters are highlighted in Red.

```
apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v2
kind: FEPCluster
metadata:
  name: mydb
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  fep:
    usePodName: true
    patroni:
      tls:
        certificateName: mydb-patroni-cert
        caName: cacert
    postgres:
      tls:
        certificateName: mydb-fep-cert
        caName: cacert
        privateKeyPassword: mydb-fep-private-key-password
  forceSsl: true
  podAntiAffinity: false
  mcSpec:
    limits:
      cpu: 500m
      memory: 700Mi
    requests:
      cpu: 200m
      memory: 512Mi
  customAnnotations:
    allDeployments: {}
  servicePort: 27500
  image:
    image: 'quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-0.0'
    pullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  sysExtraLogging: false
  podDisruptionBudget: false
  instances: 3
  syncMode: 'on'
  fepChildCrVal:
    customPgAudit: |
      # define pg audit custom params here to override defaults.
      # if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
      # changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'
      [output]
      logger = 'auditlog'
      log_directory = '/database/log/audit'
      [rule]
    customPgHba: |
      # define pg_hba custom rules here to be merged with default rules.
      # TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS      METHOD
      hostssl    all          all       0.0.0.0/0    cert
      hostssl    replication  all       0.0.0.0/0    cert
  customPgParams: >+
    # define custom postgresql.conf parameters below to override defaults.
    # Current values are as per default FEP deployment
    shared_preload_libraries='pgx_datamasking,pgaudit,pg_prewarm'
    session_preload_libraries='pg_prewarm'
    max_prepared_transactions = 100
    max_worker_processes = 30
    max_connections = 100
    work_mem = 1MB
```

```

maintenance_work_mem = 12MB
shared_buffers = 128MB
effective_cache_size = 384MB
checkpoint_completion_target = 0.8

# tcp parameters
tcp_keepalives_idle = 30
tcp_keepalives_interval = 10
tcp_keepalives_count = 3

# logging parameters in default fep installation
# if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
# changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'
log_directory = '/database/log'
log_filename = 'logfile-%a.log'
log_file_mode = 0600
log_truncate_on_rotation = on
log_rotation_age = 1d
log_rotation_size = 0
log_checkpoints = on
log_line_prefix = '%e %t [%p]: [%l-1] user=%u,db=%d,app=%a,client=%h'
log_lock_waits = on
log_autovacuum_min_duration = 60s
logging_collector = on
pgaudit.config_file = '/opt/app-root/src/pgaudit-cfg/pgaudit.conf'
log_replication_commands = on
log_min_messages = WARNING
log_destination = stderr

# wal_archive parameters in default fep installation
archive_mode = on
archive_command = '/bin/true'
wal_level = replica
max_wal_senders = 12
wal_keep_segments = 64

storage:
  dataVol:
    size: 2Gi
    storageClass: nfs-client
  walVol:
    size: 1200Mi
    storageClass: nfs-client
  logVol:
    size: 1Gi
    storageClass: nfs-client
sysUsers:
  pgAdminPassword: admin-password
  pgdb: mydb
  pgpassword: mydbpassword
  pguser: mydbuser
  pgrepluser: repluser
  pgreplpassword: repluserpwd
  pgRewindUser: rewinduser
  pgRewindPassword: rewinduserpwd
  pgAdminTls:
    certificateName: mydb-postgres-cert
    caName: cacert
    sslMode: prefer

  pgrepluserTls:
    certificateName: mydb-repluser-cert
    caName: cacert

```

```
sslMode: prefer

pgRewindUserTls:
  certificateName: mydb-rewinduser-cert
  caName: cacert
  sslMode: prefer

tdepassphrase: tde-passphrase
systemCertificates:
  key: |-
    -----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
    MIIIEowIBAAKCAQEAODfKImha8CIJiVcwXbBP1L+/DmS9/ipRhQQHxf05x7jSOnse
    IHdFd6+Qx2GX8KAIhVykf6kfacwBYTATU1xDgwWTm82KVRPh+kZDIj2wPcJr14m
    mTP6I6a2mavUgDhezHc9F8/dchYj3cw81X0kU6xamqrKQY1xQH48NkI0qcwh06sK
    AHF4eWfCr8Ot44xADIALJcU2CS1RKSZEtURZ+30Py+j907Enjp1YR33ZKUHW30pU
    9dpIneyfXBN/pT6cX3MetYwtgmpV/pHqY8pbxqGfoYRhqQDsSRC14dtlecaZeZ4j
    uTOotcPkZELHP6eu8gaLtycG9lpbAMQ15w0r8QIDAQABAoIBACq213qPuoimExrQ
    fQXaNjmqNYK4fJqxCB6oUwf0Flu4ubkx5V532hLSPHWLs+a01AWlbNozSoBVou8G
    64VwrA9bv3/cJVqZZ6/UzUTbHPU+Ogh24qhwF5QU8kXZEUI1To3YsPoftalGjX9G
    Ff0fLcLVC8nL3K9RiaDXxXbEYpWrYu39M3FCpAXAzV2PrNxsP9PKyNWHnBPc08z5
    tFj45/bHn+j31AVVvgWtqz0pLks57hc4Q7yW/2RoRYq2md1KI7090LNwtkWEOVqb
    qnraorh2TwnNaOB5oX5/lJvKt1q778fw96jGqykBr0+DKozj9rlr1OGgYOKDw1D
    nsZJPAECgYEA+Oqf/fxtPdsNGiaL2Z/heewvtaxjw/WoEVBFECb6/y4Ro7aux9nB
    16FcVi79CwfpOUTJ7cnZvYSmBk5GWEObEIAeo6llvm/QeltM5+usAPd5/TcHXLye
    92OnXmq7h3F4UXEkMayak8Lpu/TdmR5uOaL+m4aEu+XMY5tlxqDCnyECgYEAlh4X
    jCPi7Ja5CHK7a2Ud4TL2DNpIBE6GSK9iQ+0xFL6TsiK2Sfu6n8mx2sh+Jm0KHTiE
    /gWHdHQZSSWiuULfHoYEq3Rq8S6Av3GsGtRSpo03j7BE8C20Vpt0FnNTjZmdzf2/
    YZxc5KuYlh9qeY7Y7ceOsWA8JckDgMHPYzyLatECgYBALD0TPgDr8Y1vMIDDmlqH
    FF04eTk/TBYIYK1tgJ81KqthibeFzpq4q+W7UyUhZj5a4XQ0yS1fYhFpJReTc3JEd
    r+o2SH3ymuEkqmUpZZjyptrMbnWN4g3t4TDjaHqo6QQbD+GdcZyNy9M1Np9N5p17E
    fUEml4dg6d3HOEhs7QVAAQKBgQDRUx3mLXc9oKRINBIyDerGLJILQqLBQxtYl81T
    ZuFizGWL8w+PCIAMkpxDrVpWqqcGpiiuRi2ElbPapOaOg2epaY/LJscd/j5z6uc8
    W3JoN1jpKoRa4f0578Pv5tM6TYHOzlf5Veoiy/a8sI3hrNuiqkM/+TsUHY5FJDRh
    aeDk4QKBgCOHIEvvr+MwuwakzD6lNCbb8H6fvZWRAT8BYZ3wW9YfnV4J4uh/Bl
    moWYgIK2UpkrrhA8scMUC790FoybQeParQ35x7Jl91bmTKkCqsX63fyqqYhx3SXRl
    JSktmH4E2cGmosZisjB7COKHR32w0J5JCgaGInQxjldbGrwhZQpn
    -----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
  crt: |-
    -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
    MIID2CCAsCgAwIBAgIQdfFYteD4kzj4Sko2iy1IJTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADBX
    MRgwFgYDVQKEw9NeSBPcmdhbm16YXRpb24xZCZAJBgNVBAsTAkNBMS4wLAYDVQQD
    EyVNeSBPcmdhbm16YXRpb24xZCZAJBgNVBAsTAkNBMS4wLAYDVQQDQy
    MDAwMDQ1OVVoXDTIxMDQyMDAxMDQ1OVowGDEWMBQGA1UEAwNKi5jaGctCHRjLnBv
    ZDCCASIdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCAQoCggEBANaxZCJoWvAiCYlXMF2w
    T5S/vw5kvf4qUYUEB8Xzuce40jp7HiB3RXevkMdh1/CgIgIVcpH+pH2nMAWEwE1N
    cQ4MFk5vNilUT4fpGQyI9sD3Ca9eJpkz+iOmtpmr1IA4Xsx3PRfP3XIWI93MPNV9
    JFOsWpqqyKGCUB+PDZCNknMITurCgBxeHlnwq/DreOMQAYANSXFNgktUSkmRLVE
    Wft9D8vo/dOxJ46dWEd92S1B8N9KVPXaSJ3snlwTf6U+nF9zHrWMLYJqVf6R6mPK
    W8ahn6MkYEEA7EkQpeHbZxNgmXmeI7kzqLXD5GRCxz+nrvIGi7cnBvZaWwDEJecN
    K/ECaWEAAAOB3jCB2zATBgnVHSUEDDAKBggrBgEFBQcDATAMBgnVHRMBAf8EAjAA
    MIG1BgNVHREEga0wgaqCCWxvY2FsaG9zdIIBKi5jaGctCHRjLnBvZC5jbHVzdGVy
    LmxvY2FsgmMqLm15ZGItaGVhZGxlcm15ZGItaGVhZGxlcm15ZGItaGVhZGxlcm15
    LmNoZy1wdG9YbXlY1kY1loZWFKbGVzcy1zdmMuY2hnLXB0Yy5zdmMuY2xlc3Rlcj5sb2NhbDANBgkqhkiG
    9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEALnhliDflu+BHp5conq4dXBwD/Ti2YR5TWQixM/0a6OD4KecZ
    MmaLl0T+OJJvA/j2IufZpc7dzEx5mZDKR2CRmoq10qZXqCRTrBZSxm6ARQWoYpeg
    9c014f8roxrkMGUKVPTKUwAvbnNYhD2l6PlBPwMpkMUFqFaSEXMaPyQKhrTQxdpH
    WjuS54OP0lmpEYu/yiaD98LtrTXnb6jch84SKf6Vii4HAVQyMeJaW+dpkqcI2+V
    Q4fkWYSyJy8BNcmXCwvHDLdy+s4EXWvHafhusuUhc4HyMb1A6hd5hJhgFSnEvLy
    kLA0L9LaScxee6V756Vt9TN1NGjmwQDohnQQ==
    -----END CERTIFICATE-----
  cacert: |-
    -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
```

```

MIIDXCcAkSgAwIBAgIRAMPzF3BNFxt9HWE+NXlFQjQwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQAw
VzEYMBYGA1UEChMPTXkgT3JnYW5pemF0aW9uMQswCQYDVQQLLEwJJDQTEuMCwGA1UE
AxMlTXkgT3JnYW5pemF0aW9uIENlcnRpZmljYXR1IEF1dGhvcml0eTAeFw0yMTA0
MTkwNDQ0MjNaFw0zMTA0MTcwNDQ0MjNaMFcxGDAwBGNVBAoTD015IE9yZ2FuaXph
dGlvbjEELMAkGA1UECmQ0ExLjAsBgNVBAMTJU15IE9yZ2FuaXphdGlvbiBDZXJ0
aWZpY2F0ZSBBDXRob3JpdHkwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwggEKAoIB
AQc5t6CS23G1k65YMw5e4i4xHldyxkCZS67w/6LWqeIlyKmfAaEl83Wwy8MHUpOb
4mahtUafEzDEOX6+URf72J8m0voldQ5FYr1AyUOyX8U90wGFqhbEgKRqt7vZEwIe
2961fwgHh6917zI4xmt5W6ZJ5dBQVtkhzB+Pf706KBYjHoCnBBkfnVzsfzQ/1hnR
0UzimfAc7Ze+UNwhXJhinFRJ3YuR+xiOTpPk11GXPhLgFSQheKz4KepcbQEQKejb
jg0dumloBYIXZTSSbi09rNmFUVLB5DcV0vZbSrGxLjWLBt5U8N2xf2d1bvkQW+bw
Kklf90G26bAi27tujurzn3r3AgMBAAGjIzAhMA4GA1UdDwEB/wQEAwICpDAPBgNV
HRMBAf8EBTADAQH/MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA4IBAQAAM0CN3n5C/KOT4uZ4ewwKK
rHmANBPM9u6MJB08U62HcqLeoCuDFeU8zmUjLHjsQaPX64mJZ1R7T5y52gEKO5A
0qsBz3pg/vJ5DJTtV0698+1Q1hb9k3smQdksAim19FZqysB7J4zK/+8aJ/q2kIFvs
Jk3ekwQdQ3xfggklBQVuf76gr1v0uY1PtPffP1fcGZ06Im6mqbajenXoR1PxPB0
+zyCS8DkgPtDulplruwvXCFMYw9TPbzXKlt7t1sqrXogYLnXWJDzM1nOYcNd+rDm
qxenV9Ir8RqZ0XSYuYyzRka5N4dhIhrzTAiNdeU5gzynXOz67u/Iefz1iK9ZcdE3
-----END CERTIFICATE-----

```

## Deploy FEPCluster with automatic certificate management

Use the following yam1 as an example to deploy a FEPCluster with Automatic Certificate Management. MTLS related parameters are highlighted in **Red**.

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v2
kind: FEPCluster
metadata:
  name: mydb
  namespace: my-namespace
spec:
  fep:
    usePodName: true
    patroni:
      tls:
        certificateName: mydb-patroni-cert
    postgres:
      tls:
        certificateName: mydb-fep-cert
  forceSsl: true
  podAntiAffinity: false
  mcSpec:
    limits:
      cpu: 500m
      memory: 700Mi
    requests:
      cpu: 200m
      memory: 512Mi
  customAnnotations:
    allDeployments: {}
  servicePort: 27500
  image:
    image: 'quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-0.0'
    pullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  sysExtraLogging: false
  podDisruptionBudget: false
  instances: '3'
  syncMode: 'on'
  fepChildCrVal:
    customPgAudit: |
      # define pg audit custom params here to override defaults.
      # if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
      # changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'

```

```

[output]
logger = 'auditlog'
log_directory = '/database/log/audit'
[rule]
customPgHba: |
# define pg_hba custom rules here to be merged with default rules.
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS      METHOD
hostssl     all             all       0.0.0.0/0    cert
hostssl     replication    all       0.0.0.0/0    cert
customPgParams: >+
# define custom postgresql.conf parameters below to override defaults.
# Current values are as per default FEP deployment
shared_preload_libraries='pgx_datamasking,pgaudit,pg_prewarm'
session_preload_libraries='pg_prewarm'
max_prepared_transactions = 100
max_worker_processes = 30
max_connections = 100
work_mem = 1MB
maintenance_work_mem = 12MB
shared_buffers = 128MB
effective_cache_size = 384MB
checkpoint_completion_target = 0.8

# tcp parameters
tcp_keepalives_idle = 30
tcp_keepalives_interval = 10
tcp_keepalives_count = 3

# logging parameters in default fep installation
# if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
# changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'

log_directory = '/database/log'
log_filename = 'logfile-%a.log'
log_file_mode = 0600
log_truncate_on_rotation = on
log_rotation_age = 1d
log_rotation_size = 0
log_checkpoints = on
log_line_prefix = '%e %t [%p]: [%l-1] user=%u,db=%d,app=%a,client=%h'
log_lock_waits = on
log_autovacuum_min_duration = 60s
logging_collector = on
pgaudit.config_file='/opt/app-root/src/pgaudit-cfg/pgaudit.conf'
log_replication_commands = on
log_min_messages = WARNING

# wal_archive parameters in default fep installation
archive_mode = on
archive_command = '/bin/true'
wal_level = replica
max_wal_senders = 12
wal_keep_segments = 64

storage:
  dataVol:
    size: 2Gi
    storageClass: nfs-client
  walVol:
    size: 1200Mi
    storageClass: nfs-client
  logVol:
    size: 1Gi

```



```

storageClass: nfs-client
sysUsers:
  pgAdminPassword: admin-password
  pgdb: mydb
  pgpassword: mydbpassword
  pguser: mydbuser
  pgrepluser: repluser
  pgreplpassword: repluserpwd
  pgRewindUser: rewinduser
  pgRewindPassword: rewinduserpwd
  pgAdminTls:
    certificateName: mydb-postgres-cert
    sslMode: verify-full

  pgrepluserTls:
    certificateName: mydb-repluser-cert
    sslMode: verify-full

  pgRewindUserTls:
    certificateName: mydb-rewinduser-cert
    sslMode: verify-full

tdepassphrase: tde-passphrase
systemCertificates:
  key: |-
    -----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
    MIIIEowIBAAKCAQEAODFkImha8CIJiVcwXbBP1L+/DmS9/ipRhQQHxfO5x7jSOnse
    IHdFd6+Qx2GX8KAiAhVykf6kfacwBYTATU1xDgwWTm82KVRPh+kZDIj2wPcJr14m
    mTP6I6a2mavUgDhezHc9F8/dchYj3cw81X0kU6xamqrKQYlXQH48NkI0qcwh06sK
    AHF4eWfCr8Ot44xADIA1JcU2CS1RKSZEtURZ+30Py+j907EnjplYR33ZKUHW30pU
    9dpIneyfXBN/pT6cX3MetYwtgmpV/pHqY8pbxqGfoYRhgQDsSRC14dtlecaZeZ4j
    uTOotcPkZELHP6eu8gaLtycG9lpbAMQ15w0r8QIDAQABAoIBACq213qPuoimExrQ
    fqXaNJmqNYK4fJqXC6oUwf0Flu4ubkx5V532hLSPHWLs+a0lAW1bNozSoBV0u8G
    64VwrA9bv3/cJVqZZ6/UzUTbHPU+Ogh24qhwF5QU8kXZEU11To3YsPoftalgjX9G
    Ff0fLcLVC8nL3K9RiaDXXbEYpWrYu39M3FCpAXAZV2PrNxsP9PKyNWHnBpc08z5
    tFj45/bHn+j31AVVvgWtqz0pLks57hc4Q7yW/2RoRYq2md1KI7090LNwtkWEOvqb
    qnraorh2TgGnNaOB5oX5/lJvKtlq778fw96jGqykBr0+DKozj9rlr1OGgYOKDwLD
    nsZJPAECgYEA+Oqf/fxtPdsNgialL2Z/heewvtaxjw/WoEVBFEcb6/y4Ro7aux9nB
    16FcVi79CwfP0UTJ7cnZvYsMbk5GWEObEIAeo61lvm/QeltM5+usAPd5/TcHXLye
    92OnXmq7h3F4UXEkMayak8Lpu/TdmR5uOaL+m4aEu+XMY5tlxqDCnyECgYEA1h4X
    jCPi7Ja5CHK7a2Ud4TL2DNpIBE6GSK9iQ+0xFL6TsiK2Sfu6n8mx2sh+Jm0KHTiE
    /gWHdHQZSSWiuULfHoYEeq3Rq8S6Av3GsGtRSpo03j7BE8C20Vpt0FnNTjZmdzf2/
    YZxc5KuYlh9qeY7Y7ceOsWA8JckDgMHPYzyLAtECgYBALD0TPgDr8Y1vMIDdmlqH
    FF04eTk/TBYIYKltgJ81KqthibeFzp4q+W7UyUhzj5a4XQOyS1fYhFpJReTc3JEd
    r+o2SH3ymEkqmUpZZjyptrMbwN4g3t4TDjaHqo6QQbd+GdcZyNy9M1Np9N5pl7E
    fUEm14dg6d3H0Ehs7QVAAQKBgQDRUx3mLXc9oKRINBiYDerGLJILQqLBQxtY181T
    ZuFizGWL8w+PCIAMkpxDrVpWqccGpiiurI2ElbPapOaOg2epaY/LJscd/j5z6uc8
    W3JoNljpKoRa4fO578Pv5tM6TYHOz1F5Veoiy/a8sI3hrNuiqkM/+TsUHY5FJDRh
    aeDk4QKBgCOHievR+MwuwakzD6lNCbb8H6fvZ3WRAT8BYyZ3wW9YfnV4J4uh/Bl
    moWYgIK2UpkrhA8scMUC790FoybQeParQ35x7J191bmTKkCqsX63fyqqYhx3SXR1
    JSktmH4E2cGmosZisjB7COKHR32w0J5JCgaGInQxjldbGrwhZQpn
    -----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
  crt: |-
    -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
    MIID2CCAsCgAwIBAgIQDfFYteD4kZj4Sko2iy1IJTANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADBX
    MRgwFgYDVQQKEw9NeSBPcmdbmbl6YXRpb24gCzAJBgNVBAsTAkNBMS4wLAYDVQQD
    EyVNeSBPcmdbmbl6YXRpb24gQ2VydG1maWNhdGUgQXV0aG9yaXR5MB4XDTEwMDQy
    MDAwMDQ1OVowXDTIxMDQyMDAxMDQ1OVowGDEWMBQGA1UEAwNKi5jaGctCHRjLnBv
    ZDCCASIdQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADggEPADCCAQoCggEBANAXZCJoWwAiCYlXMF2w
    T5S/vw5kvf4qUYUEB8Xzuce40jp7HiB3RXevkMdh1/CgIgIVcpH+pH2nMAWEwE1N
    cQ4MFk5vNilUT4fpGQyI9sD3Ca9eJpkz+iOmtpmr1IA4Xsx3PrfP3XIWI93MPNV9
    JFOsWpqqyKJcUB+PDZCNkNMITurCgBxeHlnwq/DreOMQAYANSXFNgtUSkmRLVE
    Wft9D8vo/dOxJ46dWED92S1B8N9KVPXaSJ3snlwTf6U+nF9zHrWMLYJqVf6R6mPK

```

```

W8ahn6MkYYEA7EkQpeHbZXnGmXmeI7kzqLXD5GRCxz+nrviGi7cnBvZaWwDEJecN
K/ECaWEAAaOB3jCB2zATBgNVHSUEDDAKBggrBgEFBQcDATAMBGNVHRMBAf8EAjAA
MIGlBgNVHREEga0wgaqCCWxvY2FsaG9zdIIBKi5jaGctcHRjLnBvZC5jbHVzdGVy
LmxvY2FsgHMqLm15ZGItaGVhZGxlcm3Mtc3ZjghsqLm15ZGItaGVhZGxlcm3Mtc3Zj
LmNoZyldGOCyoubXlkYi1oZWFKbGVzcy1zdmMuY2hnLXB0Yy5zdmOCLSoubXlk
Yi1oZWFKbGVzcy1zdmMuY2hnLXB0Yy5zdmMuY2x1c3Rlc15sb2NhbDANBgkqhkiG
9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEALnhliDflu+BHp5cong4dXBwD/Ti2YR5TWQixM/0a6OD4KecZ
MmaLl0T+OJjvA/j2IufZpc7dzEx5mZDKR2CRmoq10qZxqCRTrBZSxm6ARQWoYpeg
9c014f8roxrkMGUKVPTKUwAvbnNYhd216PlBPwMpkMUFqFaSEXMaPyQKhrTQxdpH
WjuS54OP0lmp0peYu/yiaD98LtrTXnb6jch84SKf6Vii4HAVQyMeJaW+dpkqcI2+V
Q4fkWYSJy8BNcmXCwvHDLdy+s4EXWwHafhusuUhcp4HyMblA6hd5hJhgFSnEvLy
kLA0L9LaScxee6V756Vt9TN1NGjwmwyQD0hnQQ==

```

-----END CERTIFICATE-----

ca.crt: |-

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

```

MIIDXCcAKSgAwIBAgIRAMPzF3BNFXT9HWE+NXlFQjQwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQAw
VzEYMBYGA1UEChMPTXkgT3JnYW5pemF0aW9uMQswCQYDVOQLEwJQTEuMCwGA1UE
AxMlTXkgT3JnYW5pemF0aW9uIENlcnRpbzZmljYXR1IEF1dGhvcml0eTAeFw0yMTA0
MTkwNDQ0MjNaFw0zMTA0MTcwNDQ0MjNaMFcxGDAWBgNVBAoTD015IE9yZ2FuaXph
dGlvbWJELMakGAlUECxCQC0ExLjAsBgNVBAMTJU15IE9yZ2FuaXphdGlvbiBDZXJ0
aWZpY2F0ZSBDbXRoc3JpdHkwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwggEKAoIB
AQc5t6CS23G1k65YMw5e4i4xH1dyxkCZS67w/6LWqeIlyKmfAae183Wwy8MHUpOb
4mahtUafEzDEOX6+URf72J8m0voldQ5FYr1AyUoyX8U90wGFqhbEgKRqt7vZEwIe
2961fwqHh6917zI4xmt5W6ZJ5dBQVtkhzB+Pf706KBYjHoCnBBkfnVzsfZQ/1hnR
0UzimfAc7Ze+UNwhXJhinFRJ3YuR+xiOTpPk11GXPhLgFSQheKz4KepcbQEKejb
jg0dumloBYIXZTSSbi09rNmFUVLB5DcV0vZbSrGxLjWLBt5U8N2xf2d1bvkQW+bw
Kklf90G26bAi27tujurzn3r3AgMBAAGjIzAhMA4GA1UdDwEB/wQEAwICpDAPBgNV
HRMBAf8EBTADAQH/MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA4IBAQA0CN3n5C/KOT4uZ4ewwKK
rHmANBPVM9u6MJB08U62HcqLeoCuDFeU8zmUjLHjsQaPX64mJZ1R7T5y52gEKO5A
0qsBz3pg/vJ5DJTv0698+1Q1hb9k3smQdksAim19FZqysB7J4zK/+8aJ/q2kIFvs
Jk3ekwQdQ3xfggk1BQVuf76gr1v0uY1PtPfP1fcGZ06Im6mqbajenXoR1PxPB0
+zyCS8DkgPtDulplruwvXCFMyw9TPbzXK1t7t1sqRXogYLnXWJDzM1nOYcnd+rDm
qxenV9Ir8RqZ0XSYuUyzRka5N4dhIhrzTAiNdeU5gzynXOz67u/Iefzlik9ZcdE3

```

-----END CERTIFICATE-----

## 4.5.4 Configurable Parameters

To enable MTLS, make changes to the following parameters.

Key	Value	Details
spec.fep.usePodName	True	For MTLS, this key must be defined and set to true. For TLS connection without MTLS, it can be omitted. However, it is recommended to set this to true as well.
spec.fep.patroni.tls.certificateName	<secret-name>	Name of Kubernetes secret that contains the certificate in tls.crt and private key in tls.key for Patroni REST API. For MTLS Patroni REST API communication, this key must be defined. The private key cannot be password protected. When using cert-manager, the secret also contains the CA bundle in ca.crt.
spec.fep.patroni.tls.caName	<configmap-name>	Name of Kubernetes configmap that contains the CA bundle. If using cert-manager, the ca.crt is

Key	Value	Details
		already included in the secret above. In this situation, this key can be omitted.
spec.fep.postgres.tls.certificateName	<secret-name>	Name of Kubernetes secret that contains the certificate in tls.crt and private key in tls.key for Postgres server. For MTLS Postgres communication, this key must be defined. The private key can be password protected. When using cert-manager, the secret also contains the CA bundle in ca.crt.
spec.fep.postgres.tls.caName	<configmap-name>	Name of Kubernetes configmap that contains the CA bundle. If using cert-manager, the ca.crt is already included in the secret above. In this situation, this key can be omitted.
spec.fep.postgres.tls.privateKeyPassword	<secret-name>	Name of Kubernetes secret that contains the password for the private key for Postgres Server.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls.certificateName	<secret-name>	Name of Kubernetes secret that contains the certificate in tls.crt and private key in tls.key for "postgres" user. For MTLS Postgres communication, this key must be defined. The private key cannot be password protected. When using cert-manager, the secret also contains the CA bundle in ca.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls.caName	<configmap-name>	Name of Kubernetes configmap that contains the CA bundle. If using cert-manager, the ca.crt is already included in the secret above. In this situation, this key can be omitted.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls.sslMode	verify-full	For MTLS, this value must be set to verify-full. If only TLS is required, this can be set to verify-ca or prefer.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgrepluserTls.certificateName	<secret-name>	Name of Kubernetes secret that contains the certificate in tls.crt and private key in tls.key for "repluser" user. For MTLS Postgres communication, this key must be defined. The private key cannot be password protected. When using cert-manager, the secret also contains the CA bundle in ca.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgrepluserTls.caName	<configmap-name>	Name of Kubernetes configmap that contains the CA bundle. If using cert-manager, the ca.crt is already included in the secret

Key	Value	Details
		above. In this situation, this key can be omitted.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRepluserTls.sslMode	verify-full	For MTLS, this value must be set to verify-full. If only TLS is required, this can be set to verify-ca or prefer.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls.certificateName	<secret-name>	Name of Kubernetes secret that contains the certificate in tls.crt and private key in tls.key for "rewinduser" user. For MTLS Postgres communication, this key must be defined. The private key cannot be password protected. When using cert-manager, the secret also contains the CA bundle in ca.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls.caName	<configmap-name>	Name of Kubernetes configmap that contains the CA bundle. If using cert-manager, the ca.crt is already included in the secret above. In this situation, this key can be omitted.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls.sslMode	verify-full	For MTLS, this value must be set to verify-full. If only TLS is required, this can be set to verify-ca or prefer.

It is also required to customize pg\_hba.conf to perform MTLS. Below are two possible settings.

spec.fep.customPgHba	hostssl all 0.0.0.0/0 cert hostssl replication all 0.0.0.0/0 cert
----------------------	--

The above setting will force FEP server to perform certification authentication. At the same time verify the authenticity of client certificate.

spec.fep.customPgHba	hostssl all 0.0.0.0/0 md5 clientcert=verify-full hostssl replication repluser 0.0.0.0/0 md5 clientcert=verify-full
----------------------	---

The above setting will force FEP server to perform md5 authentication as well as verifying the authenticity of client certificate.

## 4.6 Replication Slots

### 4.6.1 Setting Up Logical Replication using MTLS

This section describes setup of logical replication.

To setup logical replication using MTLS, follow these steps:

1. Create two FEPClusters - to act as Publisher and Subscriber) and ensure that they can communicate with each other. You can see the creation of FEPCluster in the ["4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator"](#).

2. To setup Publisher, make following changes to the FEPCluster yaml of the cluster that you want to use as publisher:

a. Add section replicationSlots under spec.fep to create replication slots.

The "database" should be the name of the database for which we are setting up logical replication.

```
158 spec:
159   fep:
160     forceSsl: true
161     replicationSlots: |
162       myslot1:
163         type: logical
164         database: db1
165         plugin: pgoutput
166       myslot2:
167         type: logical
168         database: db1
169         plugin: pgoutput
170     podAntiAffinity: false
```

b. Add section postgres under spec.fep as shown below.

caName = enter the name of configmap created for the CA

certificateName = secret created by the end user that contains server certificate

```
78   memory: 512Mi
79   customAnnotations:
80     allDeployments: {}
81   servicePort: 27500
82   postgres:
83     tls:
84       caName: cacert
85       certificateName: my-fep-cert
86   image:
```

c. Change the value of wal\_level parameter under spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgParams from replica to logical.

```
301
302   archive_mode = on
303
304   archive_command = 'pgbackrest --stanza=backupstanza
305     --config=/database/userdata/pgbackrest.conf archive-push %p'
306
307   wal_level = logical
308
309   max_wal_senders = 12
310
311   wal_keep_size = 401
```

d. Add entry under spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgHba as shown below.

This requires the client to present a certificate and only certificate authentication is allowed.

Replace "SubClusterName" and "SubNamespace" with the appropriate values as per the Subscriber FEPCluster.

```
[rule]
customPgHba: |
  # define pg_hba custom rules here to be merged with default rules.
  # TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS      METHOD
  hostssl all all <SubClusterName>-primary-svc.<SubNamespace>.svc.cluster.local cert
customPgParams: >
```

3. To setup Subscriber, make following changes to the FEPCluster yaml of the cluster that you want to use as subscriber:
  - a. Add customCertificates under spec.fepChildCrVal as shown below.

caName = enter the name of configmap created for the CA (i.e. The CA certificate which is used to sign/authenticate the server/client certificates is mounted as a configMap called 'cacert' )

certificateName = secret created by end user that contains a client certificate which can be verified by the server

username = name of the role created on publisher cluster for logical replication

```
74   fepChildCrVal:
75     customCertificates:
76       - caName: cacert
77         certificateName: my-logicalrepl-cert
78         userName: logicalrepluser
79     customPgAudit: |
80       # define pg audit custom params here to override defaults.
81       # if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
```

4. Connect to the pod terminal of the Publisher FEPCluster and then connect to the postgres database as shown below.

```
sh-4.4$ psql -h /tmp -p 27500 -U postgres
Password for user postgres:
psql (13.1)
Type "help" for help.

postgres=#
```

5. Next, on the publisher side, connect to the database that contains the tables you want to replicate and create a role e.g., logicalrepluser and give the required permissions to this role.

Consider the below image as example only, the privileges to grant may differ as per the requirements.

```
db1=# CREATE ROLE logicalrepluser WITH REPLICATION LOGIN PASSWORD 'my_password';
CREATE ROLE
db1=# GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON DATABASE db1 TO logicalrepluser;
GRANT
db1=# GRANT ALL PRIVILEGES ON ALL TABLES IN SCHEMA public TO logicalrepluser;
GRANT
db1=#
```

6. At the Publisher side, create a publication and alter the publication to add the tables that need to be replicated.

```
db1=# create publication my_publication;
CREATE PUBLICATION
db1=# alter publication my_publication add table my_table;
ALTER PUBLICATION
db1=#
```

7. At the subscriber side, the custom certificates added in the above step 3.a will be mounted at the path /tmp/custom\_certs/ as shown:

```
sh-4.4$ ls -rlt /tmp/custom_certs
total 0
drwxr-xr-t. 3 1001190000 root 103 Aug 10 10:08 logicalrepluser
sh-4.4$ ls -rlt /tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser
total 0
lrwxrwxrwx. 1 1001190000 root 14 Aug 10 10:08 tls.key -> ../data/tls.key
lrwxrwxrwx. 1 1001190000 root 14 Aug 10 10:08 tls.crt -> ../data/tls.crt
lrwxrwxrwx. 1 1001190000 root 13 Aug 10 10:08 ca.crt -> ../data/ca.crt
sh-4.4$
```

8. The structure of the table to be replicated should be present in the subscriber cluster since logical replication only replicates the data and not the table structure.

Create a subscription as shown below:

```
db1=# CREATE SUBSCRIPTION my_subscription CONNECTION 'host=fepcluster-publisher-primary-svc.ns-a.svc.cluster.local port=27500 sslcert=/tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser/tls.crt sslkey=/tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser/tls.key sslrootcert=/tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser/ca.crt sslmode=verify-full dbname=db1 user=logicalrepluser' PUBLICATION my_publication WITH (slot_name=myslot1, create_slot=false);
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION
```

The command in the above example is :

```
CREATE SUBSCRIPTION my_subscription CONNECTION 'host=fepcluster-publisher-primary-svc.ns-a.svc.cluster.local port=27500 sslcert=/tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser/tls.crt sslkey=/tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser/tls.key sslrootcert=/tmp/custom_certs/logicalrepluser/ca.crt sslmode=verify-full password=my_password user=logicalrepluser dbname=db1' PUBLICATION my_publication WITH (slot_name=myslot1, create_slot=false);
```

Host = primary service of the publisher FEP Cluster  
sslcert, sslkey, sslrootcert = path to certificates mounted on the Subscriber FEP Cluster  
user= Role created on the Publisher side  
password= password for the role  
dbname= database which contains the tables to be replicated

Where

Host = primary service of the publisher FEP Cluster  
sslcert, sslkey, sslrootcert = path to certificates mounted on the Subscriber FEP Cluster  
user= Role created on the Publisher side and used to establish logical replication connection fromSubscriber to Publisher  
dbname= database which contains the tables to be replicated

# Chapter 5 Post-Deployment Operations

This chapter describes the operation after deploying the container.

## 5.1 Configuration Change

This section describes changes to the FEPCluster configuration.

### List FEPCluster

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl get FEPClusters (-A)`

This operation will list all FEPClusters in a namespace, or if the `-A` option is specified, will list all FEPClusters in all namespace.

Default output format:

Field	Value	Details
NAME	<code>.metadata.name</code>	Name of Cluster
COUNT	<code>.spec.fep.instances</code>	Number of FEP nodes in the cluster

Example)

```
# kubectl get fepclusters -A
NAMESPACE      NAME          AGE
namespace1     ns1fep1      21h
namespace2     ns2fep2      22h
```

### Update FEPCluster

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl apply -f <new_spec>`

Operations that can be performed here.

Custom Resource spec	Change effect
<code>.spec.fep.instances: <i>n</i></code>	Increase the number of nodes in the cluster to <i>n</i> .
<code>.spec.fep.image.image:</code> <code>'quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-1.1'</code>	Minor upgrade of FEP image to ubi8-13-1.1.
<code>spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.image.image:</code> <code>'quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup:ubi8-13-1.1'</code>	Minor upgrade of Backup image to ubi8-13-1.1.

This will impact behaviour for values in `fep` section only.  
All parameters can be updated from the FEPCluster custom resource.

### Delete FEPCluster

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl delete FEPCluster <cluster_name>`

This operation will remove the FEPCluster by the `cluster_name` and all Child CRs (FEPVolume, FEPClusterConfig, FEPCert & FEPUser) & resources associated with it.



Deleting a FEPCluster will delete all PV associated with the cluster, including backup and archived WAL volumes (unless using AWS S3). This is an unrecoverable action.



## When connecting from outside the OpenShift system

Automatically creating a service with ClusterIP to connect to the deployed container. You can connect to FEP or FEP pgpool2 services from the OpenShift system's internal network. To access from outside the OpenShift system, you need to know the address of the OpenShift node.

For example, "Access the FEP pgpool2 container from an application server that is running outside the OpenShift system but is part of the Internal network".

An example of how to check the node IP in OpenShift.

```
$ oc get nodes
NAME                                STATUS    ROLES    AGE    VERSION
openshiftcluster1-cmfv8-master-0    Ready    master   370d   v1.19.0+4c3480d
openshiftcluster1-cmfv8-master-1    Ready    master   370d   v1.19.0+4c3480d
openshiftcluster1-cmfv8-master-2    Ready    master   370d   v1.19.0+4c3480d
$ oc describe nodes openshiftcluster1-cmfv8-master-0 | grep IP
InternalIP: 10.0.2.8
```

An example of verifying the service resource for the FEP pgpool2 container.

```
$ oc get all
```

Check where the resource type is Service (Begin with the "svc /").

You can also see this with the oc get svc command. The following is an example.

```
$ oc get svc
NAME                                TYPE        CLUSTER-IP    EXTERNAL-IP    PORT(S)                                AGE
svc-feppgpool2-feppgpool2          NodePort    172.30.248.12 <none>         9999: 30537/TCP, 9998: 30489/TCP    2m5s
```

This is an example of accessing the FEP pgpool2 container.

```
$psql -h 10.0.2.8 -p 30537 -c "show pool_nodes"
```

## 5.2 FEPCluster Resource Change

### 5.2.1 Changing CPU and Memory Allocation Resources

Describes how to change the CPU and memory resources assigned to a pod created by a FEPCluster.

This allows you to scale the pod vertically through custom resources.

To modify CPU and memory resources, modify the spec.fep.mcSpec section(\*1) of the FEPCluster custom resource and apply your changes.

When the changes are applied, restart the replica server with the new resource settings. If there are multiple replica servers, restart them one at a time. When all replica servers are restarted, one of them is promoted to the new master server due to a switchover. Then restart the container image on the original master server. This allows you to change resource settings for all servers with minimal disruption.

\*1) Modifying this section scales up the FEP server container. For information about other container resource sections, refer to "FEPCluster Parameters" in the Reference.

### 5.2.2 Resizing PVCs

Describes how to resize a PVC assigned to a pod created by a FEPCluster.

This allows you to increase the size of the volume allocated to the pod through custom resources.

To change the PVC size, modify the size of each volume in the spec.fepChildCrVal.storage section of the FEPCluster custom resource and apply the change. These changes apply to all PVCs assigned to the pod created by the FEPCluster.

## Note

- PVC resizing is extensible only.
- You can resize a PVC only if the StorageClass supports dynamic resizing.
- If the StorageClass does not support resizing PVCs, use the FEPRestore custom resource to create a new FEPCluster to resize the PVC. For more information, refer to "FEPRestore Custom Resource Parameters" in the Reference.

## 5.3 FEPPGPool2 Configuration Change

This section describes changes to the FEPPGPool2 configuration.

### List FEPPGPool2

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl get FEPPGPool2 (-A)`

This operation will list all FEPClusters in a namespace, or if the `-A` option is specified, will list all FEPClusters in all namespace.

Default output format:

Field	Value	Details
Name	.metadata.name	Name of pgpool2

Example)

```
# kubectl get feppgpool2 -A
NAMESPACE      NAME
namespace1     fep1-pgpool2
namespace2     fep2-pgpool2
```

### Delete FEPPGPool2

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl delete FEPPGPool2 <pgpool2_name>`

This operation will remove the FEPPGPool2 by the `pgpool2_name`.

### Update FEPPGPool2

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl apply -f <new_spec>`

Specify updated parameters in the format described in "[2.3.4 Deploying Pgpool-II and Connect to FEPCluster from Operator](#)". Only following parameters would change for Operations that can be performed here.

Custom Resource spec	Change Effect
.spec.count: n	Increase the number of nodes in the cluster to n.
.spec.serviceport	Change the TCP port for connecting to the Pgpool-II.
.spec.statusport	Change the TCP port for connecting to the PCP process.
.spec.limits.cpu	Change limits of cpus.
.spec.limits.memory	Change limits of memory.
.spec.requests.cpu	Change requests of cpus.
.spec.requests.memory	Change requests of memory.
.spec.fepclustername	Change fepccluster to connect.
.spec.customhba	Change pool_hba.conf file.

Custom Resource spec	Change Effect
.spec.customparams	Change pgpool2 parameters
.spec.custompcp	Change pcp.conf file.
.spec.customsslkey	Change key content
.spec.customsslcert	Change the contents of the public x 509 certificate.
.spec.customsslcert	Change the contents of the CA root certificate in PEM format.

Some of the customparams parameters, customhba and custompcp, require a restart of pgpool2.

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `Kubectl apply -f <new_spec>`

"pgpool2\_restart" action type expects users to specify the name of the pgpool2 that they want to restart from.

Specify the metadata.Name of the FEPPGPool2 CR in the targetPgpool2Name section of the FEPACTION CR, as below:

```
spec:
  targetPgpool2Name: fep1-pgpool2
  fepAction:
    type: pgpool2_restart
```



When updating FEPPGPool2, the POD of FEPPGPool2 is restarted. If configured with more than one FEPPGPool2, they are rebooted sequentially. The application should be designed to reconnect the connection because the connection being connected is broken.

## 5.4 Scheduling Backup from Operator

### Operational status confirm

Information about the backup can be found by running the command in the FEP backup container, as shown in the example below.

```
$ oc exec pod/fepserver-XXXXX -c FEPbackup - pgbackrest info
stanza: fepbackup
  status: ok
  cipher: none

db (current)
  wal archive min/max (12-1): 000000010000000000000001/000000010000000000000005

  full backup: 20201125-025043F
    timestamp start/stop: 2020-11-25 02:50:43 / 2020-11-25 02:50:52
    wal start/stop: 000000010000000000000003 / 000000010000000000000003
    database size: 31.7MB, backup size: 31.7MB
    repository size: 3.9MB, repository backup size: 3.9MB

  incr backup: 20201125-025043F_20201125-025600I
    timestamp start/stop: 2020-11-25 02:56:00 / 2020-11-25 02:56:02
    wal start/stop: 000000010000000000000005 / 000000010000000000000005
    database size: 31.7MB, backup size: 24.3KB
    repository size: 3.9MB, repository backup size: 619B
    backup reference list: 20201125-025043F
```

### Update FEPBackup

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl apply -f <new_spec>`

Specify updated parameters in the format described in "2.3.5 Scheduling Backup from Operator". Only following parameters would change for Operations that can be performed here.

Custom Resource spec	Change Effect
spec.schedule.num	Change the Number of Registered Backup Schedules
spec.scheduleN.schedule	Change the scheduled backup time
spec.scheduleN.type	Change the scheduled backup type
spec.pgBackrestParams	Change pgBackRest parameters

### Note

- Changes made during the backup are reflected from the next backup.
- Changes to the backup schedule do not affect the application.
- If you perform any of the following update operations, be sure to obtain a backup after the update.
  - When the master encryption key is updated with `pgx_set_master_key`
  - When the encryption passphrase for transparent data encryption is updated (can be updated by the `tdeppassphrase` parameter of FEPCluster CR)

## 5.5 Configure MTLs Setting

---

### 5.5.1 Certification Rotation

---

All certificates are bounded by the time limit. At certain time, it needs to be renewed. We recommend to renew the certificate when it reaches 3/4 of its life cycle or as soon as possible if it is compromised. When a certificate is renewed, we need to rotate it inside the FEP server container. At the moment, FEP server container does not support automatic certificate rotation. Depending on which certificate has renewed, there are different procedures to handle that.

#### Patroni Certificate Rotation

When Patroni certificate is renewed, we have to re-deploy each and every POD for FEP server container to pick up the new certificate. There is a down time on FEPCluster.

#### FEP Server Certificate Rotation

When FEP Server certificate is renewed, we can use FEPAction CR to trigger a reload of the database and FEP server will pick up the new certificate with no interruption to service.

#### Client certification Rotation

When any of the client certificate is renewed, FEP server container internally will use the new certificate next time it establishes a connection to FEP server. However, to avoid any unexpected interruption to service, it is recommended to re-deploy each and every POD as soon as possible.

## 5.6 Monitoring

---

Monitoring is collecting historic data points that you then use to generate alerts (for any anomalies), to optimize databases and lastly to be proactive in case something goes wrong (for example, a failing database).

There are five key reasons to monitor FEP database.

### 1. Availability

It is a very simple equation that if you do not have a database in running, your application will not work. If the application is critical, it directly effects on users and the organization.

### 2. System Optimization

Monitoring helps to identify the system bottlenecks and according to the user can make changes to your system to see if it resolves the problem or not. To put this into perspective, there may be a situation where users see a very high load on the system. And figured out that there is a host parameter that can be set to a better value.

### 3. Identify Performance Problems

Proactive monitoring can help you to identify future performance problems. From the database side, it could be related to bloating, slow running queries, table and index statistics, or the vacuum being unable to catch up.

### 4. Business Process Improvement

Every database user has a different need and priority. Knowing the system (load, user activity, etc.) helps you to prioritize customer tasks, reporting, or downtime. Monitoring helps to make business process improvement.

### 5. Capacity Planning

More user or application growth means more system resources. It leads to key questions: Do you need more disk space? Do you need a new read replica? Do you need to scale your database system vertically? Monitoring helps you to understand your current system utilization—and if you have data, points spread over a few weeks or months, it helps to forecast system scaling needs.

This article describes monitoring and alerting operations using OpenShift's standard POD alive monitoring, resource monitoring and database statistics provided by the FEP Exporter.

## 5.6.1 Monitoring FEP Operator and Operands

---

The monitoring of FEP operators and operands are achieved by Prometheus' standard alive and resource monitoring.

Metrics name	Details
Alive monitoring	Can monitor POD status
Resource monitoring	You can monitor the following resource status <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- CPU Usage</li><li>- CPU Quota</li><li>- Memory Usage</li><li>- Memory Quota</li><li>- Current Network Usage</li><li>- Receive Bandwidth</li><li>- Transmit Bandwidth</li><li>- Rate of Received Packets</li><li>- Rate of Transmitted Packets</li><li>- Rate of Received Packets Dropped</li><li>- Rate of Transmitted Packets Dropped</li></ul>

By setting alert rules based on these monitoring items, operators and operands can be monitored. For the setting method, refer to the appendix in the Reference.

If an error is detected by monitoring the operator's alive, it can be dealt with by recreating the POD.

If resource monitoring detects an error, consider allocating more resources to the Operator or Operands.

Check the Operator Hub or Red Hat Operator Catlog page to see which version you are currently using, which can be updated, and to check for security vulnerabilities.

## 5.6.2 Monitoring FEP Server

Monitoring and alerts system leverages standard GAP stack ( Grafana, Alert manager, Prometheus) deployed on OCP and Kubernetes. GAP stack must be there before FEP operator & FEPCluster can be deployed.

Prometheus is a condensed way to store time-series metrics. Grafana provides a flexible and visually pleasing interface to view graphs of FEP metrics stored in Prometheus.

Together they let store large amounts of metrics that user can slice and break down to see how the FEP database is behaving. They also have a strong community around them to help deal with any usage and setup issues.

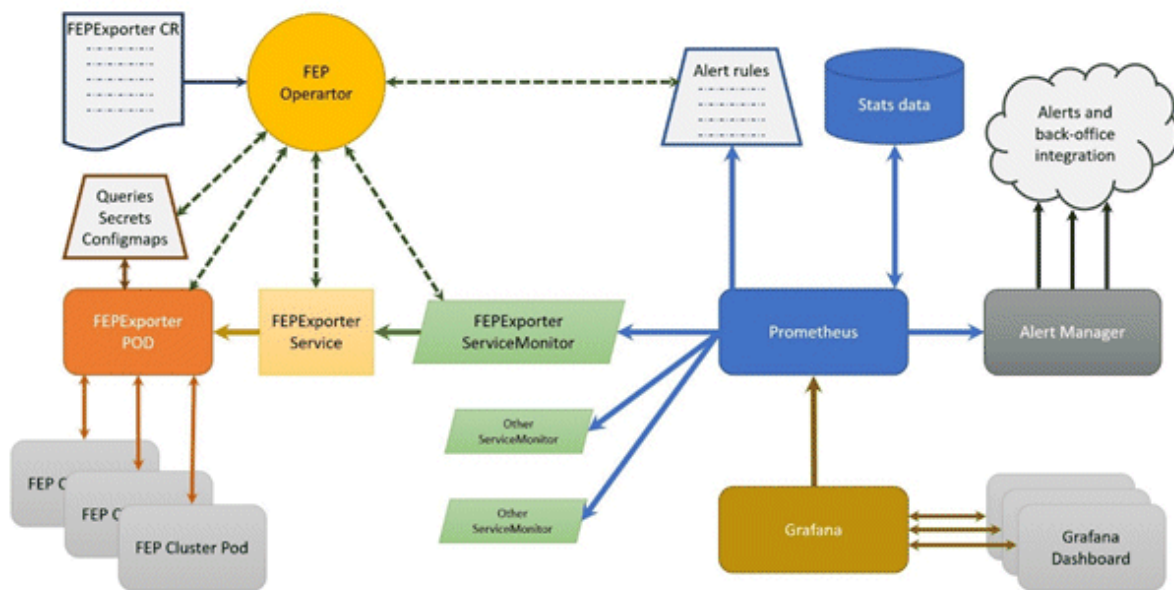
The Prometheus acts as storage and a polling consumer for the time-series data of FEP container. Grafana queries Prometheus to displaying informative and very pretty graphs.

If Prometheus rules are defined, it also evaluates rules periodically to fire alerts to Alert manager if conditions are met. Further Alert manager can be integrated with external systems like email, slack, SMS or back-office to take action on alerts raised.

Metrics from FEP Cluster(s) is collected by Prometheus through optional components deployed using FEP Exporter with default set of metrics and corresponding Prometheus rules to raise alerts. User may extend or overwrite metrics by defining their custom metrics queries and define their custom Prometheus rules for alerting.

### 5.6.2.1 Architecture

Block diagram of monitoring FEP server is as follows.



- FEPExporter CR is managed by FEP Operator
- When FEPExporter CR is created, FEP operator creates following kubernetes objects:
  - ConfigMap that contains default and custom queries to collect metrics from database cluster from each node
  - Secret containing JDBC URL for all FEPCluster nodes to connect and request metrics. This string contains authentication details as well to make JDBC connection.
  - Prometheus rules corresponding to default alert rules

- ServiceMonitor for Prometheus to discover FEPEXporter service
- FEPEXporter container using FEPEXporter image to scrape metrics from all FEPCluster nodes

## Note

- Alert Manager integration to back-office to send mail / message / raising ticket is done by user based on their environment
- Grafana installation and integration is done by user. Use the Grafana Operator provided by OperatorHub.
- Grafana dashboard is created by user based on their requirements and design.

### 5.6.2.2 Default Server Metrics Monitoring

By default FEPEXporter scrapes some useful metrics for server.

Once FEPEXporter is running, user can check the collected metrics under Openshift->Monitoring->Metrics submenu.

There are 2 levels of default server metrics defined by FEP Exporter

Type	Details
Default mandatory	Are collected by FEP Exporter. These are kept enabled by default by FEP Exporter and can not be disabled by end user.
Default useful	Useful focused metrics for health and performance metrics. Can be disabled by end user.

#### Default mandatory metrics

These metrics are either from basic statistics view of the database or FEP Exporter own metrics;

Various metrics under this category are

Metrics name	Details
pg_stat_bgwriter_*	Maps to view in Statistic Collector
pg_stat_database_*	Maps to view in Statistic Collector
pg_stat_database_conflicts_*	Maps to view in Statistic Collector
pg_stat_archiver_*	Maps to view in Statistic Collector
pg_stat_activity_*	Maps to view in Statistic Collector
pg_stat_replication_*	Maps to view in Statistic Collector
pg_replication_slots_*	Maps to System Catalog pg_replication_slots
pg_settings_*	Maps to System Catalog pg_settings
pg_locks_*	Maps to System Catalog pg_locks
pg_exporter_*	Exposes exporter metrics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- last_scrape_duration_seconds (Duration of the last scrape of metrics from PostgreSQL)</li> <li>- scrapes_total (Total number of times PostgreSQL was scraped for metrics)</li> </ul> last_scrape_error ( Whether the last scrape of metrics from PostgreSQL resulted in an error; 1 for error & 0 for success)
pg_*	Exposes exporter metrics <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- pg_up ( set to 1 if the connection to service is success, 0 otherwise )</li> <li>- pg_static ( can be used to fetch label short_version / version containing postgres server version information )</li> </ul>

## Default useful metrics

There are certain useful queries which are additionally added to evaluate the health of the Database system.

Metrics name	Details
pg_capacity_connection_*	Metrics on connections e.g. txns running for 1 hour
pg_capacity_schema_*	Metrics on disk space of schema
pg_capacity_tblspace_*	Metrics on disk space of tablespace
pg_capacity_tblvacuum_*	Metrics on tables without vacuum for days
pg_capacity_longtx_*	Number of transactions running longer than 5 minutes Review the information and consider SQL tuning and resource enhancements.
pg_performance_locking_detail_*	Details of processes in blocked state
pg_performance_locking_*	Number of processes in blocked state
pg_replication_*	Replication lag behind master in seconds  Provides the ability to check for the most current data in a reference replica  To solve the problem, it is necessary to consider measures such as increasing network resources and reducing the load
pg_postmaster_*	Time at which postmaster started
pg_stat_user_tables_*	Important statistics from pg_stat_user_tables
pg_statio_user_tables_*	Important statistics from pg_statio_user_tables
pg_database_*	Database size  If the database runs out of space, database restore is required
pg_stat_statements_*	Statistics of SQL statements executed by server
pg_capacity_tblbloat_*	Fetches bloat in tables

## Note

You can tune the intervals and thresholds at which information is gathered by changing the values specified in the information gathering query. For more information, refer to the queries in the appendix of the Reference Guide, and make your own settings.

Refer an example below.

The screenshot shows the Red Hat OpenShift Monitoring console interface. On the left sidebar, the 'Monitoring' section is expanded, and 'Metrics' is selected. The main area displays a table of metrics. One row is circled in red, showing the following details:

Icon	Label	Source	Target	Labels	Annotations	Unit	Alerting	Created	Updated	Deleted	Phase	Status	Value
📊	pg_stat_activity_count	prometheus-fcp-exporter	mydb	new-Rep-exporter-http	10/31/07@18:07	new-Rep-exporter-service	🔔	🕒	🗑️	🔄	idle	active	0



### 5.6.2.3 Default Alerts

There are few basic alert rules which are setup by the FEP Operator as below

Alert rule	Alert Level	Condition persistence	Description
ContainerHighCPUUsage	Warning	5 mins	FEP server container/Pod CPU usage is exceeding 80% of the resource limits
ContainerHighRAMUsage	Warning	30 mins	FEP server container/Pod memory usage is exceeding 80% of the resource limits
PVCLowDiskSpace	Warning	5 mins	A FEP PVC (volume) has less than 10% disk available
ContainerDisappeared	Warning	60 seconds	FEP server container/Pod has disappeared since last 60 seconds
Postgresqldown	Error	-	FEP server apparently went down or not accessible
PostgresqlTooManyConnections	Warning	-	FEP server container/Pod connection usage is beyond 90% of its available capacity

\*\* The alerts are based on statistics/metrics. If a platform statistics are incorrect, it may raise an incorrect alarm.

e.g. if the Storage Driver is not showing correct metrics for bytes usage for a PV, system may end up raising incorrect alarm of PVCLowDiskSpace. This behaviour can be seen with NFS storage.

You can configure any alert by adding alert rules to other monitoring items.

### 5.6.2.4 Graphical user interface

User can build their custom dashboard using default and custom metrics.

An example Grafana dashboard screenshot is shown below



### 5.6.3 Monitoring FEP Backup

You can view information about the backed-up data and the status of the backup process in the FEP server tables and system views.

Backup information is updated when the automatic backup process completes or when backup data is deleted as specified by retention.

The following tables and views are added. The tables and views to be added are created under the `feh_exporter` schema in the postgres database on the FEP server.

Table/View name	Details
pgbackrest_info_backup	Backup Processing Status

### 5.6.3.1 pgbackrest\_info\_backup view

Contains one line per backup for information about the state of the backup.

Column	Type	Description
label	text	Information identifying the backup
type	text	full: full backup, incr: incremental backup
prior	text	Label of the backup that should be applied first (For incremental backups only)
database_size	bigint	Database size
database_size_comp	bigint	Database size (After Compression)
backup_size	bigint	Backup size
backup_size_comp	bigint	Backup size (After Compression)
archive_start	text	Range of WALs required for restore (Start)
archive_stop	text	Range of WALs required for restore (End)
backup_start	timestamp with timezon	Backup Start Time
backup_stop	timestamp with timezone	Backup End Time
backup_exec_time	interval	The duration of the backup

## 5.6.4 Monitoring FEP PGPool2

Information about pgpool2 activity and replication status can be found in the FEP server table and in the system view.

The pgpool2 statistics are updated according to the schedule specified in the parameter.

The tables and views that have been added are described below. The tables and views to be added are created under the fep\_exporter schema in the postgres database on the FEP server.

Table/View name	Details
pgpool2_stat_load_balance	Load Balance Information in pgpool2
pgcluster_stat_replication	Replication State
pgpool2_stat_conn_pool	Connection Pool State for pgpool2
pgpool2_stat_sql_command	SQL Command Statistics

### 5.6.4.1 pgpool2\_stat\_load\_balance view

Contains one row for MasterService and one row for ReplicaService.

Column	Type	Description
node_id	integer	database node id (0 or 1)
status	text	status (up or down)
lb_weight	double precision	load-balancing weight
role	text	role (primary or standby)
last_status_change	timestamp with time zone	last status change time

### 5.6.4.2 pgpool2\_stat\_conn\_pool view

Indicates the state of the connection pool. Contains connection pool information for each pcpool2 instance.

Column	Type	Description
pgpool2_node_id	integer	pgpool2 node id (0 - the number of pgpool2 instance -1)
pool_pid	integer	The PID of the displayed Pgpool-II process
start_time	timestamp with timezone	The timestamp of when this process was launched
pool_id	integer	The pool identifier (should be between 0 and max_pool - 1)
backend_id	integer	The backend identifier (should be between 0 and the number of configured backends minus one)
role	text	role (primary or standby)
database	text	The database name for this process's pool id connection
username	text	The user name for this process's pool id connection
create_time	timestamp with timezo	The creation time and date of the connection
majorversion	integer	The protocol version numbers used in this connection
minorversion	integer	The protocol version numbers used in this connection
pool_counter	integer	Counts the number of times this pool of connections (process) has been used by clients
pool_connected	boolean	True (1) if a frontend is currently using this backend

### 5.6.4.3 pgpool2\_stat\_sql\_command view

Represents SQL command statistics.

Column	Type	Description
node_id	integer	The backend identifier (should be between 0 and the number of configured backends minus one)
role	text	role (primary or standby)
select_cnt	integer	The numbers of SQL command: SELECT
insert_cnt	integer	The numbers of SQL command: INSERT
update_cnt	integer	The numbers of SQL command: UPDATE
delete_cnt	integer	The numbers of SQL command: DELETE
ddl_cnt	integer	The numbers of SQL command: DDL
other_cnt	integer	The numbers of SQL command: others
panic_cnt	integer	The numbers of failed commands
fatal_cnt	integer	The numbers of failed commands
error_cnt	integer	The numbers of failed commands

## 5.7 Event Notification

---

The eventing mechanism introduced, is to enable operator to raise customized Kubernetes events. The custom events will be raised during the creation of custom resources. Currently following events are raised.

## 5.7.1 Events raised

---

- fecluster - During FEPCluster CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPVolume CR creation is initiated and when FEPVolume CR creation initiation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPConfig CR creation is initiated and when FEPConfig CR creation initiation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPUser CR creation is initiated and when FEPUser CR creation initiation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPCert CR creation is initiated and when FEPCert CR creation initiation fails.
  - Event is raised when Statefulset creation is successful and Statefulset creation fails.
  - Event is raised when PDB creation is successful and when PDB creation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPBackup CR creation is initiated and when FEPBackup CR creation initiation fails.

### **Please note the following child CR events are raised as part of Create FEP Cluster**

- fepcert - During FEPCert CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPCert CR creation is successful, when FEPCert CR fails annotating FEPCluster and when FEPCert CR creation fails.
- feconfig - During FEPConfig CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPConfig CR creation is successful, when FEPConfig CR fails annotating FEPCluster and when FEPConfig CR creation fails.
- fepvolume - During FEPVolume CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPVolume CR creation is successful, when FEPVolume CR fails annotating FEPCluster and when FEPVolume CR creation fails.
- febackup - During FEPBackup CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPBackup cronjob1 creation is successful and when FEPBackup cronjob1 creation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPBackup cronjob2 creation is successful and when FEPBackup cronjob2 creation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPBackup cronjob3 creation is successful and when FEPBackup cronjob3 creation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPBackup cronjob4 creation is successful and when FEPBackup cronjob4 creation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPBackup cronjob5 creation is successful and when FEPBackup cronjob5 creation fails.
- feppgpool2- During FEPPgPool2 CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPPgPool2 CR creation is successful and when FEPPgPool2 CR creation fails.
  - Event is raised when FEPPgPool2Cert CR creation is initiated and when FEPPgPool2Cert CR creation initiation fails.

### **Please note the following child CR event are raised as part of Create FEP PgPool2**

- feppgpool2cert- During FEPPgPool2Cert CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPPgPool2Cert CR creation is successful, when FEPPgPool2Cert CR fails annotating FEPPgPool2 and when FEPPgPool2Cert CR creation fails
- feprestore - During FEPRestore CR creation
  - Event is raised when FEPRestore CR creation is successful and when FEPRestore CR creation fails.

## 5.7.2 Viewing the custom events

---

The custom events can be viewed on CLI as well as the Openshift console

1. On cli

Executing the command

**kubectl get events**

OR

**oc get events**

Following is a snippet of the events output is ==shown when the above command is executed,

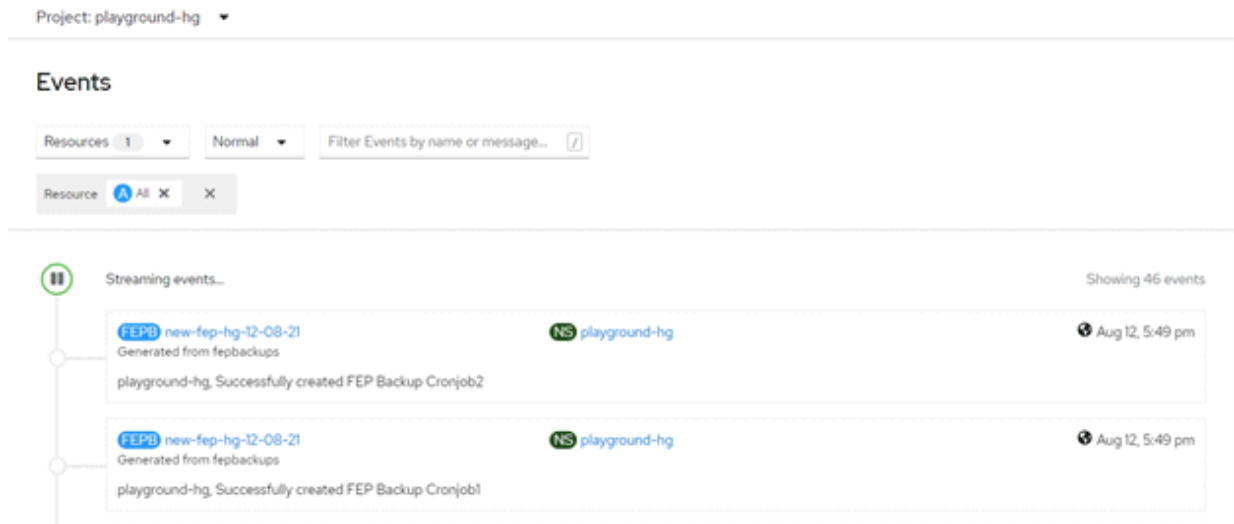
```

14m Normal InitiatedChildCRCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Started FEP Volume CR creation
13m Normal InitiatedChildCRCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Started FEP User CR creation
13m Normal InitiatedChildCRCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Started FEP Cert CR creation
13m Normal SuccessfulFepVolumeCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP Volume
13m Normal SuccessfulFepUserCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP User
13m Normal SuccessfulFepCertCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP Cert
13m Normal SuccessfulFepConfigCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP Config
13m Normal SuccessfulFepBackupCronjob1Create feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP Backup Cronjob1
13m Normal SuccessfulFepBackupCronjob2Create feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP Backup Cronjob2
13m Normal SuccessfulFepVolumeCreate feplistner/new-fep-hg-12-08-21 playground-hg, Successfully created FEP Volume

```

2. On openshift console

For the specific project/ namespace the custom events can be viewed along with Kubernetes events under the events as shown in the following screenshot.



## 5.8 Scaling Replicas

### 5.8.1 Auto Scale Out

Auto-scale-out occurs when the average CPU utilization of the DB container exceeds the threshold.

The maximum number of replica containers, excluding the master container, is 15.

Specify `spec.fepChildCrVal.autoscale.scaleout` in `FEPClusterCR` when you want to perform Auto scale out.

```
$ oc edit feplistner <FEPClusterCR name>
```

### 5.8.2 Manual Scale In/Out

To manually scale in or out of a `FEPCluster`, edit the `"spec.fep.instances"` in `FEPClusterCR`.

The value must be between 1 and 16. (Number of instances with one master)

```
$ oc edit feplistner <FEPClusterCR name>
```

 Note

Do not scale in from two to one replica instance when the syncMode is 'on'. Update SQL cannot be executed.

# Chapter 6 Maintenance Operations

This chapter describes the maintenance operation after deploying the container.

## 6.1 Minor Version Upgrade

Minor FEP version upgrade is done by replacing the image in FEPCluster customer resource with a new one. For the procedure, refer to "Minor Version Upgrade" in the Overview.

Update information can be found in the Red Hat catalog to see if a new FEP database server container has been released.

Upgrades are rolling updated, so you can localize downtime, but it is recommended that you avoid running during business hours as connected applications will result in connection errors.



The upgrade process will cause an outage on the cluster for the duration to upgrade both Master and Sync Replica. If there is no Sync Replica in the cluster, the outage is limited to the length of time to upgrade the Master (or actually the failover time required to take another replica been promoted by patroni).

## 6.2 Cluster Master Switchover

You can switch a master instance to a replica instance in the event of a master instance performance failure or planned node maintenance.

Specify "switchover" for the action type of the FEPAAction CR to update FEPAAction CR.

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl apply -f <new_spec>`

"switchover" action type expects users to specify the name of the current leader/primary pod that they want to switchover from. Specify the name in the args section under the FEPAAction CR spec as below:

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    args:
      - new-fep-sts-2
    type: switchover
  targetClusterName: new-fep
```

Here, new-fep-sts-2 is the current primary.

Refer to "FEPAAction Custom Resource Parameters" in the Reference for more information on parameters.

## 6.3 Perform PITR and the Latest Backup Restore from Operator

It can be used to restore a database to a specific location due to an application failure or to prepare a duplicate database for production.

Restore process can restore data by creating a CR (FEPRestore CR) for the restore as follows:

`oc create -f [Custom Resource Files]`

Example)

```
$oc create -f config/samples/postgres_v1_restore.yaml
```

There are two methods of restoring: restoring data to an existing FEPCluster or restoring data to a new FEPCluster.

When restoring to an existing FEPCluster, information such as the FEPCluster name, IP address, and various settings remain the same.

If you restore to a new FEPCluster, the FEPCluster name is the one you specified in CR and the new IP address is also given. If the setting value is not specified, the new cluster will inherit the settings from the restore source cluster, but you can change the settings to create a new cluster by specifying them in CR.

## 6.3.1 Setting Item

---

Refer to "FEP Restore Custom Resource Parameters" in the Reference for the items to be set in a custom resource file.

## 6.3.2 After Restore

---

### Switching connections to the new cluster

The restore creates a new FEPCluster. If necessary, you need to set up Pgpool-II and change the access point of the application to the new cluster or the new Pgpool-II.

### Backup data of the destination cluster

PITR restores to the pre-restore time are not possible, because the backup of the destination cluster begins after the restore completes.

## 6.4 Major Version Upgrade

---

Provides major version upgrade procedures for operators and containers.

### 6.4.1 Install a New Version of the Operator

---

See "[Chapter 3 Operator Installation](#)" to install a new version of the FEP operator.

The Namespace you install can be different from the older version of the operator you are upgrading.

### 6.4.2 Deploy a New Version of a Container

---

See "[Chapter 4 Deployment Container](#)" to deploy the FEP container.

If necessary, deploy the Pgpool2 container.

### 6.4.3 Migrating Data Between Containers

---

Database data migration requires business application outages. Use the pre-verification to understand the migration time in this section and estimate the downtime.

1. Stop the operation to the old DB container in operation.
2. Extract database data from the old database container. Run on the database client where the client corresponding to the old database engine is installed. Get the database data, schema from the old database container by executing the following command.

Example)

```
$CLIENT_DIR=[Directory path where the database engine client was installed]
$export PATH=${CLIENT_DIR}/bin:${PATH}
$export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${CLIENT_DIR}/lib:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}
$IP=[Destination IP address of the old DB container]
$PORT=[ Port number of the old DB container]
$pg_dumpall -h ${IP} -p ${PORT} -U postgres > db.dump
```



Check the database size in advance by connecting to database and executing SQL below.

```
$ SELECT pg_size_pretty(sum(pg_database_size(datname))) AS dbsize FROM pg_database;
```

Since the pg\_dumpall command used above outputs the data of the database as an SQL command, the file actually created is:

For example, 2147483647 of type integer is 4 bytes for database data,



However, since SQL commands output them as strings, this is 10 bytes. Therefore, run it in a location where there is sufficient disk space.

3. Populate the new DB container with data.

Run the new database engine client on the installed database client.

Populate the new DB container deployed in "6.4.2 Deploy a New Version of a Container" with the schema and data extracted from the old DB container using the `pg_dump` command.

Example)

```
$CLIENT_DIR=[ Directory path where the database engine client was installed]
$export PATH=${CLIENT_DIR}/bin:${PATH}
$export LD_LIBRARY_PATH=${CLIENT_DIR}/lib:${LD_LIBRARY_PATH}
$IP=[Destination IP address of the new DB container]
$PORT=[ Port number of the new DB container]
$psql -h ${IP} -p ${PORT} -U postgres -d postgres -f db.dump
```

 **Note**

When database data is input, a message that the following extension registration failed is output, but ignore this message.

- pgx\_cpu
- pgx\_disk
- pgx\_io
- pgx\_log
- pgx\_memory
- pgx\_network
- pgx\_network\_err
- pgx\_paging
- pgx\_process
- pg\_stat\_statements

4. Change the destination configured for the application to the new DB container or the new Pgpool2 container.

 **Note**

- For more information about the `pg_dumpall` command, see the following in the source database engine documentation ("PostgreSQL 13 documentation").  
\*"VI. Reference" - "II. PostgreSQL Client Applications" - "pg\_dumpall"
- For more information on the `psql` command, see the destination database in the documentation ("PostgreSQL 13 documentation").  
\*"VI. Reference" - "II. PostgreSQL Client Applications" - "psql"

## 6.4.4 Removing Old Containers

---

If necessary, remove the old DB container.

"Operators" > "Installed Operators" > "FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres <Old version> Operator" > "FEPCluster" > "FEPCluster name to delete" > Choose "Delete FEPCluster" from Actions

## 6.4.5 Uninstalling Old Operators

---

Uninstall the old FEP operator if necessary.

"Operators" > "Installed Operators" > "FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres <Old version> Operator" > Choose "Uninstall Operator" from Actions

## 6.5 Assigned Resources for Operator Containers

The following resources are allocated by default to the operator containers provided by this product.

```
resources:
limits:
  cpu: 2
  memory: 1536Mi
requests:
  cpu: 500m
  memory: 768Mi
```

If there is only one FEPCluster custom resource managed by an operator, it can be operated with the resource assigned by default. However, when deploying and operating multiple FEPCluster custom resources, change the assigned resource of the operator container.



### Note

If you have changed the resource, the resource value will revert to the default value after the operator version upgrade. Therefore, change the resource again after upgrading the operator.

### 6.5.1 How to Change Assigned Resources

Describes how to change the resources assigned to an operator container.

When updating resources assigned to an operator container, the operator container is recreated. At this time, the operation of already built containers such as FEPCluster will not stop.

Edit the ClusterServiceVersion (CSV) to change the resources assigned to the operator container.

Editing the CSV "spec.install.spec.deployments[0].spec.template.spec.containers[0].resources" will recreate the operator container and apply the specified resources.

When editing CSV from the OCP GUI console

Click [Installed Operators] in the menu item under Operators and select the installed operator. On the [YAML] tab, edit the specified part of the allocation resource and click [Save].

The screenshot shows the OCP GUI console interface. On the left, a sidebar menu is open to 'Installed Operators'. The main content area displays the 'Operator details' for 'FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 Operator'. The 'YAML' tab is selected, showing the configuration for the operator container. The 'resources' section is highlighted, showing the following configuration:

```
481     vendor: Fujitsu
482     spec:
483       containers:
484         - resources:
485             limits:
486               cpu: '2'
487               memory: 3072Mi
488             requests:
489               cpu: 500m
490               memory: 768Mi
491             name: fep-ansible-operator
492             livenessProbe:
493               failureThreshold: 10
```

At the bottom of the editor, there are buttons for 'Save', 'Reload', 'Cancel', and 'Download'.

When editing CSV from the CUI console using the OC client

Check the CSV name of the installed operator with the "oc get" command.

```
$ oc get csv
NAME                                DISPLAY                                VERSION  REPLACES  PHASE
fujitsu-enterprise-operator.v3.1.6  FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 Operator  3.1.6
Succeeded
```

Edit the CSV with the "oc edit" command.

```
$ oc edit csv fujitsu-enterprise-operator.v3.1.6
```

# Chapter 7 Abnormality

This chapter describes the actions to take when an error occurs in the database or an application, while FEP is operating.

Depending on the type of error, recover from the backed-up material, reserve capacity, check the operator log, and check the FEP log.

## 7.1 Handling of Data Abnormalities

Recover the database cluster from the backup immediately prior to failure in any of the following cases:

- A hardware failure occurs on the data storage disk or the backup data storage disk.
- If the data on the disk is logically corrupted and the database does not work correctly
- Data corruption caused by user error

Refer to "[6.3 Perform PITR and the Latest Backup Restore from Operator](#)" for backup instructions.

## 7.2 Handling when the Capacity of the Data Storage Destination or Transaction Log Storage Destination is Insufficient

If you run out of space in the data storage location, first check if there are any unnecessary files on the disk, and then delete them so that you can continue working.

If deleting unnecessary files does not solve the problem, you may need to migrate the data to a larger disk.

Use a backup restore to migrate data.

## 7.3 What to do when the Capacity of the Backup Data Storage Area is Insufficient

If you run out of space in the backup data destination, first check the disk for unnecessary files, and then delete the unnecessary files. Or reduce the backup retention generation.

## 7.4 Handling Access Abnormalities When Instance Shutdown Fails

If an instance fails to start or stop, refer to the Operator log and the FEP log to determine the cause.

For checking the operator log and the FEP log, refer to Collecting Fault Investigation Information.

## 7.5 Collection of Failure Investigation Information

If the cause of the trouble that occurred during the construction or operation of the environment is not identified, information for the initial investigation is collected.

I will explain how to collect information for the initial investigation.

- Product log
- Operator log

### Product log

FEP log

Get into the container and collect the log.

The log location is specified by `log_directory` in the custom resource `FEP Clusterspec.startupValues.customPgParam` parameter. The default is `/database/log`.

## Pgpool-II log

Get into the container and collect the log.

The log location is /var/log/pgpool/pool.log.

## Operator log

Check the operator log as follows.

### Verification Example

```
$oc get po
NAME                                READY   STATUS    RESTARTS   AGE
fep-ansible-operator-7dc5fd9bf7-4  smzk   1/1      Running    0          20m
```

### How to check the log

```
$oc logs pod fep-ansible-operator-7dc5fd9bf7-4 smzk -c manager
```

The log will be output to the console. Please check the file output by redirection.

# Appendix A Quantitative Values and Limitations

## A.1 Quantitative Values

Refer to the FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server.

## A.2 Limitations

### Note

If you log in to a container and edit the configuration file directly, restarting the container may undo your changes.

If you want to change the settings, modify the custom resource files as described in "[5.1 Configuration Change](#)" and reapply. Depending on the parameters to be changed, the container may be redeployed. Refer to "[5.1 Configuration Change](#)" for details of the parameters.

### Unavailable FEP features

Since FEP server container is based on other components (like UBI and Patroni), there are certain limitations that doesn't allow it to be 100% functionally capable to VM based server instance. The known limitations are as below.

No	Limitation	Reason for Limitation	Description
1	No Support for JIT	Since UBI8 is not having requisite LLVM libraries	It is not possible to enable JIT in postgresql.conf.  Impact for the customer is that they are not able to achieve maximum performance capabilities on given CPU and memory
2	FEP parallelism improvements	Since UBI8 is not hosting dstat binaries	FEP parallelism improvement is to restrict number of parallel workers in case the CPU is already busy because of other tasks/processes. It is unlikely to have too much impact on FEP container, since container is running only one process.
3	Crypto Express cards are not supported	IBM LinuxOne doesn't support CryptoExpress cards in Openshift container platform at this stage.	FEP TDEz extension cannot be used on LinuxOne Openshift environment.  However, User can still use TDE on both LinuxOne Openshift environment as well as Azure (x86) Openshift environment.
4	No Support for Oracle foreign data wrapper	Oracle foreign data wrapper has dependency on Instant Client package, which is not available.	Oracle InstantClient package is not redistributed by FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres leading to this limitation.  The functionality of Oracle Foreign data wrapper is not available to FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres on Openshift environment.

### Fixed parameter

Some parameters cannot be changed. Refer to "[2.3.5.2 Parameters that cannot be Set](#)".

### FEP features that needs to be set when using

Refer to "[2.3.7 FEP Unique Feature Enabled by Default](#)".

# Appendix B Adding Custom Annotations to FEPCluster Pods using Operator

This section describes instructions for adding custom annotations to a FEPCluster pod.

1. In YAML view of the Create FEPCluster section, add custom annotations as below and then click on Create.

The screenshot shows the Red Hat OpenShift console interface. On the left is a navigation sidebar with options like Administrator, Home, Operators, Workloads, etc. The main content area is titled 'Create FEPCluster' and is in 'YAML View' mode. The YAML code is as follows:

```
1  apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v2
2  kind: FEPCluster
3  metadata:
4    name: new-fep-with-cust-anno
5    namespace: install-test
6  spec:
7    fep:
8      customAnnotations:
9        allDeployments:
10         annotation1: value1
11         annotation2: value2
12     forceSSI: true
13     image:
14       pullPolicy: IfNotPresent
15     instances: 1
16     mcSpec:
17       limits:
18         cpu: 500m
19         memory: 700Mi
20       requests:
21         cpu: 200m
22         memory: 512Mi
23     podAntiAffinity: false
24     podDisruptionBudget: false
```

At the bottom of the editor, there are 'Create', 'Cancel', and 'Download' buttons.

- Both the Statefulset and its resulting pods will be annotated with your provided annotations: archivalVol and backupVol must be ReadWriteMany.

The screenshot shows the Red Hat OpenShift console interface. The left sidebar contains navigation menus for Administrator, Home, Operators, Workloads, and Horizontal Pod Autoscalers. The main content area displays the details for a StatefulSet named 'new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts' in the 'install-test' project. The 'YAML' tab is active, showing the following configuration:

```

1 kind: StatefulSet
2 apiVersion: apps/v1
3 metadata:
4   annotations:
5     annotation1: value1
6     annotation2: value2
7   statusCheckAt: 'Tue Sep  7 15:23:31 UTC 2021'
8   selfLink: >
9     /apis/apps/v1/namespaces/install-test/statefulsets/new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts
10  resourceVersion: '147317819'
11  name: new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts
12  uid: 269c888b-434d-48de-b1d4-832636ad521c
13  creationTimestamp: '2021-09-07T15:20:55Z'
14  generation: 1
15  managedFields:
16    - manager: OpenAPI-Generator
17      operation: Update
18      apiVersion: apps/v1
19      time: '2021-09-07T15:20:55Z'
20      fieldsV1: FieldsV1
21      fieldsV1:
22        'f:metadata':
23          'f:annotations':

```

Buttons for 'Save', 'Reload', 'Cancel', and 'Download' are visible at the bottom of the editor.

The screenshot shows the Red Hat OpenShift console interface, similar to the previous one. The main content area displays the pod template configuration for the StatefulSet 'new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts'. The 'YAML' tab is active, showing the following configuration:

```

535   name: new-fep-with-cust-anno
536   uid: 27037431-46a9-49eb-a723-3b8c2e8aab49
537   labels:
538     app: new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts
539     fepclustername: new-fep-with-cust-anno
540   spec:
541     replicas: 1
542     selector:
543       matchLabels:
544         app: new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts
545         fepclustername: new-fep-with-cust-anno
546     template:
547       metadata:
548         creationTimestamp: null
549       labels:
550         app: new-fep-with-cust-anno-sts
551         fepclustername: new-fep-with-cust-anno
552       annotations:
553         annotation1: value1
554         annotation2: value2
555       spec:
556         restartPolicy: Always
557         serviceAccountName: new-fep-with-cust-anno-sa

```

Buttons for 'Save', 'Reload', 'Cancel', and 'Download' are visible at the bottom of the editor.



## Appendix C Utilize Shared Storage

Explains how to build a FEPCluster when using shared storage.

Use a disk where PV accessModes can specify ReadWriteMany.

This chapter shows an example of using NFS as PV in static provisioning.

### C.1 Creating a StorageClass

Create a StorageClass.

In the OCP WebGUI screen, click "StorageClass" in the main menu "Storage", then press "Create Storage Class" > "Edit YAML" and edit YAML to create the StorageClass.

If you are using the CLI, create a yaml file and create a StorageClass with the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

YAML definitions are created with reference to the following samples.

Example)

```
apiVersion: storage.k8s.io/v1
kind: StorageClass
metadata:
  name: < StorageClass Name >
provisioner: kubernetes.io/no-provisioner
reclaimPolicy: Delete
volumeBindingMode: WaitForFirstConsumer
```

### C.2 Creating a PersistentVolume

Create as many PersistentVolumes (PV) as you need.

On the Web GUI screen, click "PersistentVolumes" in the main menu "Storage", click "Create PersistentVolume", and edit YAML to create PV.

If you are using the CLI, create a yaml file and create a PV using the following command:

```
$ oc create -f <file_name>.yaml
```

YAML definitions are created with reference to the following samples.

The StorageClass name specifies the StorageClass created in "[C.1 Creating a StorageClass](#)".

Assign a different NFS directory for each PV.

In addition, accessModes is ReadWriteMany.

Example)

```
apiVersion: v1
kind: PersistentVolume
metadata:
  name: < PV name >
spec:
  capacity:
    storage: < Capacity Required ex.8Gi >
  accessModes:
  - ReadWriteMany
  persistentVolumeReclaimPolicy: Retain
  mountOptions:
  - hard
  nfs:
```

```
path: < NFS directory path (Assign a different directory for each PV) ex. /nfs/pv >
server: < IP address of the NFS server ex. 192.168.1.10>
storageClassName: < StorageClass name created in "C.1 Creating a StorageClass">
```

## C.3 Creating FEPCluster

Specifies that ReadWriteMany PV is used in the YAML definition in step 4 of "[4.1 Deploying FEPCluster using Operator](#)".

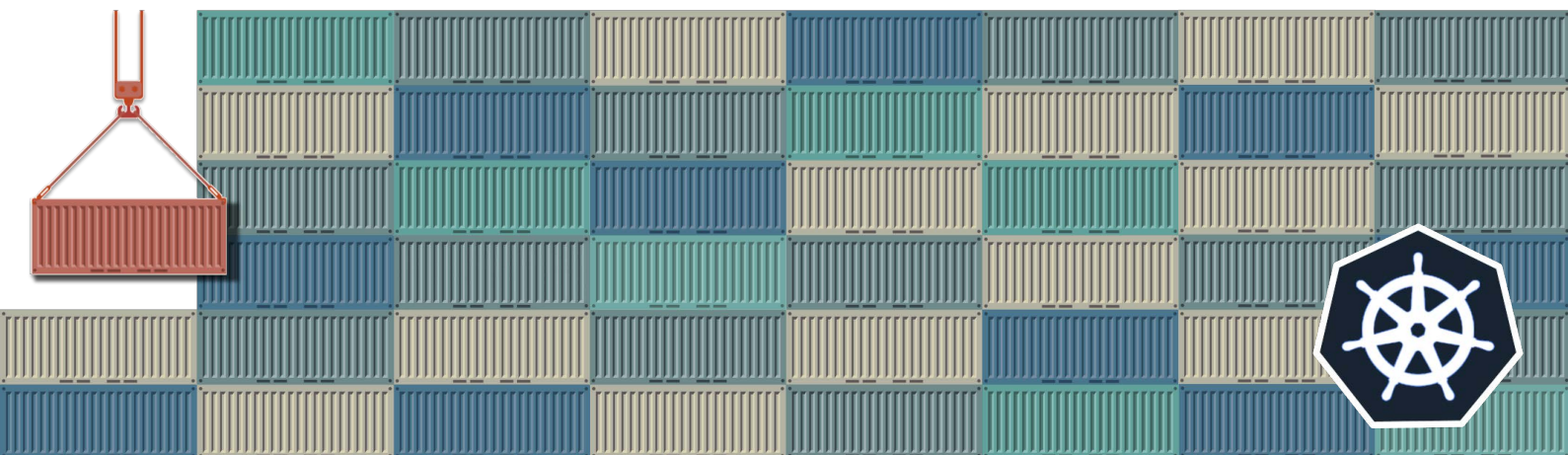
In spec.fepChildCRVal.storage, specify the StorageClass and AccessModes of the PV created in "[C.2 Creating a PersistentVolume](#)".

The "spec.fepChildCRVal.storage.<Volume Type>.size" should be less than or equal to the PV allocated.

Example) Using PV created by archivewalVol and backupVol

```
apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v2
kind: FEPCluster
metadata:
  name: t3-fep
spec:
  ~ Suppress ~
  fepChildCrVal:
    storage:
      archivewalVol:
        size: < Capacity Required ex. 8Gi >
        storageClass: <StorageClass name created in C.1 Creating a StorageClass" >
        accessModes:
          - "ReadWriteMany"
      backupVol:
        size: < Capacity Required ex. 8Gi >
        storageClass: <StorageClass name created in C.1 Creating a StorageClass" >
        accessModes:
          - "ReadWriteMany"
  ~ Suppress ~
```

# FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres 13 for Kubernetes



## Reference

# Preface

---

## Purpose of this document

This document is a reference, and explains parameter.

## Intended readers

This document is aimed at people who manage and operate.

Readers of this document are also assumed to have general knowledge of:

- Linux
- Kubernetes
- Containers
- Operators

## Structure of this document

This document is structured as follows:

### [Chapter 1 Custom Resource Parameters](#)

Explains the parameter.

### [Appendix A Default Metrics Queries](#)

Explains the Default Metrics Queries

### [Appendix B Default Alert Rules](#)

Explains the Default Alert Rules

## Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used in this manual:

Full Name	Abbreviations
FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres for Kubernetes FUJITSU Software Enterprise Postgres	FEP or FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres
Transparent Data Encryption	TDE
Custom Resource	CR
Custom Resource Definition	CRD
Persistent Volume	PV

## Trademarks

- Linux is a registered trademark or trademark of Mr. Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.
- Red Hat and all Red Hat-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Red Hat, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- S/390 is a registered trademark of International Business Machines Corporation ("IBM") in the U.S. and other countries.

Other product and company names mentioned in this manual are the trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

## Export restrictions

If this document is to be exported or provided overseas, confirm legal requirements for the Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Act as well as other laws and regulations, including U.S. Export Administration Regulations, and follow the required procedures.

## Issue date and version

Edition 5.0: June 2023
Edition 4.0: October 2022
Edition 3.0: November 2021
Edition 2.0: October 2021
Edition 1.0: September 2021

## Copyright

Copyright 2021-2023 FUJITSU LIMITED

# Contents

---

Chapter 1 Custom Resource Parameters.....	1
1.1 FEPCluster Parameter.....	1
1.2 Custom Resource Parameters.....	14
1.2.1 FEPCluster Custom Resource Parameters.....	14
1.2.2 FEP Cluster Configuration .....	19
1.2.3 FEPConfig Child Custom Resource Parameters.....	20
1.2.4 FEPUser Child Custom Resource Parameters.....	22
1.2.5 FEPCVolume Child Custom Resource Parameters.....	23
1.2.5.1 Create Volumes.....	23
1.2.5.2 Delete Volumes.....	25
1.2.6 FEPCert Child Custom Resource Parameters.....	26
1.2.6.1 Create/ Update Certificates .....	26
1.2.6.2 Delete Certificates.....	26
1.2.7 FEPCBackup Child Custom Resource Parameters.....	28
1.2.8 FEPCRestore Custom Resource Parameters.....	28
1.2.9 FEPCPool2 Custom Resource Parameters.....	30
1.2.10 FEPCAction Custom Resource Parameters.....	34
1.2.10.1 FEPCAction Specific Operation Details.....	35
1.2.11 FEPCExporter Custom Resource.....	37
1.2.12 FEPCAutoscale Custom Resource.....	39
Appendix A Default Metrics Queries.....	40
Appendix B Default Alert Rules.....	49

# Chapter 1 Custom Resource Parameters

This chapter explains the parameter.

## 1.1 FEPCluster Parameter

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl apply -f FEPClusterCR.yaml`

This operation will create a FEPCluster with supplied information in FEPClusterCR.yaml.

Initial configuration and subsequent changes to FEP Cluster are done through FEP Cluster CR.

Field	Default	Details
metadata.name	new-fep	Name for the Cluster. FEP server container will use this value for Patroni scope. e.g. new-fep
spec.fep.autoPodRestart	<omitted>	Optional This parameter affects the behaviour when value(s) of CPU, memory and/or image for FEP and/or optional Backup container are updated in FEPCluster CR. If it is NOT defined and set to True, operator will automatically create an action CR to make values effective by restarting all pods in an orderly fashion to minimise outage. If it is set to False, automatic restart of PoDs will NOT happen. To make the changes effective, user must restart pods by creating action CR with type 'pod_restart' and arguments 'ALL'
spec.fep.customAnnotation.allDeployments	{ } (* )	Contents under this are optional. User can remove { } and add multiple key-value pairs. All of these pair will be added to annotations of FEP statefulSet and FEP Pods. If left at default, no annotation is added to Pods and statefulSets
spec.fep.image.image	<omitted>	FEP server container image to be used quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-0.0 It is optional. Image line is omitted by default. In such a case, it will pick up URL of image from operator container environment. If you specify the image, Operator will take that image to deploy fep container
spec.fep.image.pullPolicy	IfNotPresent	
spec.fep.mcSpec.limits	cpu: 500m memory: 700Mi	

Field	Default	Details
spec.fep.mcSpec.requests	cpu: 200m memory: 512Mi	
spec.fep.sysExtraLogging	false	To turn extra debugging on, set value to true It can be turned on/off at any time
spec.fep.instances	1	Number of nodes in the cluster, including both Master and Replicas. In Example CR, it is kept at 1 for certification. However, user can change it to 3 for 1 master and 2 replicas.
spec.fep.servicePort	27500	TCP port for FEP master service
spec.fep.syncMode	off	Replication Mode: off - async replication on - sync replication
spec.fep.forceSsl	true	Controls that the communication to the server should only be via SSL. Changes are reflected in pg_hba.conf
spec.fep.monitoring		This is an Optional section. This defines whether monitoring enabled(true) or disabled(false) , MTLs enabled or disabled & Basic authentication enabled or not
spec.fep.monitoring.enable	false	If set true, the operator will create FEPEXporter with given spec
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter		This is Optional section. Exporter spec section applied only if enable: true
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.authSecret		This is Optional section. Base Authentication secret to provide username & encrypted password of user
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.authSecret.secretName	( created by user )	Mandatory Name of secret that contains username and password
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.authSecret.userKey	( created by user )	Mandatory Key of username in specified secret
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.authSecret.passwordKey	( created by user )	Mandatory Key of password in specified secret
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.tls		This is optional section. FEPEXporter MTLs specs. Mandatory if tls specs defined for Prometheus specs
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.tls.certificateName	( created by user )	Mandatory.This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of FepExporter. Prometheus will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt.



Field	Default	Details
spec.fep.monitoring.fepExporter.tls.caName	( created by user )	Mandatory This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt.
spec.fep.monitoring.prometheus		This is Optional section. Prometheus specs are mandatory if tls specs defined for FEPEXporter
spec.fep.monitoring.prometheus.tls		Prometheus MTLS specs
spec.fep.monitoring.prometheus.tls.certificateName	( created by user )	This is an Optional parameter. These points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of Prometheus. FEPEXporter will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt.
spec.fep.monitoring.prometheus.tls.caName	( created by user )	This is an Optional parameter. This point to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt.
spec.fep.podAntiAffinity	false	Defines that all the pods should not run on same worker node
spec.fep.podDisruptionBudget	false	Allows to maintain minimum number of pods of an application even when some nodes are voluntarily drained for say, maintenance
spec.fep.replicationSlots		List of Patroni permanent replication slots.
spec.fep.replicationSlots.demo_subscription1		The 'demo_subscription1' is the slot name. This name cannot be same as any pod name (e.g., new-fep-sts-01) in the cluster. Otherwise, the slot will not be created.
spec.fep.replicationSlots.type	logical	Must be 'logical' for logical replication
spec.fep.replicationSlots.database	postgres	Specify the database name for logical replication
spec.fep.replicationSlots.plugin	pgoutput	FEP supports 'pgoutput' by default.
spec.fep.usePodName		Optional Setting this key to true will make internal POD communication, both Patroni and Postgres to use hostname, instead of IP address. This is important for TLS as the hostname of the POD is predictable and can be used to create Server Certificate, whereas IP address is unpredictable and cannot be used to create Certificate. There is no negative effect setting this key to true even if TLS (i.e. Server Certificate) is not used.
spec.fep.patroni.tls.certificateName	( created by user )	Optional This point to Kubernetes TLS secret that

Field	Default	Details
		contains the certificate for Patroni. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt. This field is optional.  When this key is set, the Operator will ignore the value in systemCertificates
spec.fep.patroni.tls.caName	( created by user )	Optional This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA for Patroni to verify client. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt. This field is optional.
spec.fep.postgres.tls.certificateName	( created by user )	Optional This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate for Postgres. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt. This field is optional. When this key is set, Operator will ignore the value in systemCertificates
spec.fep.postgres.tls.caName	( created by user )	Optional This point to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA for Postgres to verify client. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt. This field is optional.
spec.fep.postgres.tls.privateKeyPassword	( created by user )	Optional This points to Kubernetes secret that contains the password for the above private key. This field is optional.
spec.fepChildCrVal.customCertificates		Optional This is an optional parameter, which comprises of the parameters mentioned below. It is an array of elements to define certificates. Used to setup SSL connection between publisher and subscriber clusters for logical replication
spec.fepChildCrVal.customCertificates.userName		Optional This should be the username of the publisher database. When this parameter is specified, an empty folder is created under FEP Server Container- /tmp/ custom_certs/<username>. The custom certificates are mounted in this empty folder. However, if this parameter is not specified, the section is ignored and folder is not created; hence the certificates are not mounted without it.
spec.fepChildCrVal.customCertificates.certificateName	( created by user )	Optional This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the custom certificate. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.customCertificates.caName	( created by user )	Optional This points to Kubernetes configmap

Field	Default	Details
		that contains CA certificate to verify server. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup		Optional This section is defined to enable febackup sidecar for cluster backup feature.
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.image.image	<omitted>	FEP backup container image to be used quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup:ubi8-13-0.0 It is optional. Image line is omitted by default. In such a case, it will pick up URL of image from operator container environment. If you specify the image, Operator will take that image to deploy backup container
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.image.pullPolicy	IfNotPresent	
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.mcSpec.limits	cpu: 0.2 memory: "300Mi"	
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.mcSpec.requests	cpu: 0.1 memory: "200Mi"	
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.pgbackrestParams	[global] repo1-retention-full=7 repo1-retention-full-type=time log-path=/database/log/backup	" " When nothing is specified, and the parameter set in pgbackrest.conf is described from the line below.
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.schedule.num	0	Number of schedules to set The maximum number of backup schedules is 5.
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.scheduleN.schedule	" "	Backup schedule in cron format. The date and time is UTC time.
spec.fepChildCrVal.backup.scheduleN.type	" "	full: Perform a full backup (Back up the contents of the database cluster). incr – Perform an incremental backup (Back up only the database cluster files that were changed to the last backup migration).
spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgAudit	[output] logger = 'auditlog' log_directory = '/database/log/audit' log_truncate_on_rotation = on log_filename = 'pgaudit-%a.log' log_rotation_age = 1d log_rotation_size = 0	PgAudit file content

Field	Default	Details
	[rule]	
spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgHba	# define pg_hba custom rules here to be merged with default rules. # TYPE DATABASE USER ADDRESS METHOD	Entries to be inserted into pg_hba.conf
spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgParams	# define custom postgresql.conf parameters below to override defaults. # Current values are as per default FEP deployment shared_preload_libraries='pgx_datamasking.pg_prewarm.pg_stat_statements' session_preload_libraries='pg_prewarm' max_prepared_transactions = 100 max_worker_processes = 30 max_connections = 100 work_mem = 1MB maintenance_work_mem = 12MB shared_buffers = 128MB effective_cache_size = 384MB checkpoint_completion_target = 0.8 # tcp parameters tcp_keepalives_idle = 30 tcp_keepalives_interval = 10 tcp_keepalives_count = 3 # logging parameters in default fep installation # if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be # changed to '/database/userdata/data/log' log_directory = '/database/log' log_filename = 'logfile-%a.log' log_file_mode = 0600 log_truncate_on_rotation = on log_rotation_age = 1d log_rotation_size = 0 log_checkpoints = on log_line_prefix = '%e %t [%p]: [%l-1] user=%u,db=%d,app=%a,client=%h' log_lock_waits = on log_autovacuum_min_duration = 60s logging_collector = on	Postgres configuration in postgresql.conf

Field	Default	Details
	<pre> pgaudit.config_file=/opt/app-root/src/ pgaudit-cfg/pgaudit.conf  log_replication_commands = on  log_min_messages = WARNING  log_destination = stderr  # wal_archive parameters in default fep installation  archive_mode = on  archive_command = 'pgbackrest -- stanza=backupstanza --config=/ database/userdata/pgbackrest.conf archive-push %p'  wal_level = replica  max_wal_senders = 12  wal_keep_segments = 64  track_activities = on  track_counts = on </pre>	
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.dataVol		Mandatory volume
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.dataVol.size	2Gi (**)	Size of data volume. Data volume must be specified
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.dataVol.storageClass	<omitted> (*)	StorageClass for data volume: When this line is omitted, the PV created will use default storage class in the Kubernetes cluster
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.dataVol.accessModes	<omitted> (*)	accessModes for data volume: Specified as an array of accessModes e.g. [ReadWriteMany] If omitted, it will be treated as [ReadWriteOnce]
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.walVol		Mandatory volume
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.walVol.size	1200Mi (**)	Size of WAL volume. WAL volume must be specified
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.walVol.storageClass	<omitted> (*)	StorageClass for WAL volume: When this line is omitted, the PV created will use default storage class in the Kubernetes cluster
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.walVol.accessModes	<omitted> (*)	accessModes for WAL volume: Specified as an array of accessModes e.g. [ReadWriteMany] If omitted, it will be treated as [ReadWriteOnce]
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.tablespaceVol		Optional volume

Field	Default	Details
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.tablespaceVol.size	512Mi (**)	Size of tablespace volume. This volume is optional and can be omitted
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.tablespaceVol.storageClass	<omitted> (*)	StorageClass for tablespace volume: When this line is omitted, the PV created will use default storage class in the Kubernetes cluster
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.tablespaceVol.accessModes	<omitted> (*)	accessModes for tablespace volume: Specified as an array of accessModes e.g. [ReadWriteMany] If omitted, it will be treated as [ReadWriteOnce]
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.archivewalVol		Mandatory if backup section is defined. Optional otherwise
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.archivewalVol.size	1Gi (**)	Size of archivewal volume. This volume is optional and can be omitted
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.archivewalVol.storageClass	<omitted> (*)	StorageClass for Archived WAL volume: When this line is omitted, the PV created will use default storage class in the Kubernetes cluster When the number of instance is more than 1 and backup is not done on S3, both archivewalVol and backupVol must be hosted on Shared storage such as NFS with respective storageClass
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.archivewalVol.accessModes	<omitted> (*)	accessModes for Archived WAL volume: Specified as an array of accessModes e.g. [ReadWriteMany] If omitted, it will be treated as [ReadWriteOnce] When the number of instance is more than 1 and backup is not done on S3, both archivewalVol and backupVol must be hosted on Shared storage such as NFS with accessMode set to [ReadWriteMany]
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.logVol		Optional volume
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.logVol.size	1Gi (**)	Size of log volume. This volume is optional and can be omitted
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.logVol.storageClass	<omitted> (*)	StorageClass for log volume:

Field	Default	Details
		When this line is omitted, the PV created will use default storage class in the Kubernetes cluster
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.logVol.accessModes	<omitted> (* )	accessModes for log volume: Specified as an array of accessModes e.g. [ReadWriteMany] If omitted, it will be treated as [ReadWriteOnce]
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.backupVol		Mandatory if backup section is defined. Optional otherwise
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.backupVolume.size	2Gi (* *)	Size of backup volume. This volume is optional and can be omitted
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.backupVolume.storageClass	<omitted> (* )	StorageClass for backup volume: When this line is omitted, the PV created will use default storage class in the Kubernetes cluster When the number of instance is more than 1 and backup is not done on S3, both archivalVol and backupVol must be hosted on Shared storage such as NFS with respective storageClass
spec.fepChildCrVal.storage.backupVolume.accessModes	<omitted> (* )	accessModes for backup volume: Specified as an array of accessModes e.g. [ReadWriteMany] If omitted, it will be treated as [ReadWriteOnce] When the number of instance is more than 1 and backup is not done on S3, both archivalVol and backupVol must be hosted on Shared storage such as NFS with accessMode set to [ReadWriteMany]
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdmin Password	admin-password	Password for user "postgres" Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0-9), symbols (~! @ # \$^ & * () - = < > , . ? ; :   / +)
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgdb	mydb (* )	Database to be created during provisioning Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0-9), and underscores (_) However, you cannot start with a number.

Field	Default	Details
		Upper case letters are treated as lower case letters. Maximum string length 63 characters
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pguser	mydbuser (* )	Database user to be created during provisioning Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0 -9), and underscores ( _ ) However, you cannot start with a number. Upper case letters are treated as lower case letters. Maximum string length 63 characters
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgpassword	mydbpassword	Password for database user pguser Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0 -9), symbols (~! @ # \$^ & * ( ) - = < > , . ? ; :   / +)
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgrepluser	repluser (* )	Database user for replication Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0 -9), and underscores ( _ ) However, you cannot start with a number. Maximum string length 63 characters
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgreplpassword	repluserpwd	Password for database user repluser Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0 -9), symbols (~! @ # \$^ & * ( ) - = < > , . ? ; :   / +)
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.tdepassword	tde-password	TDE keystore passphrase
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUser	rewind_user	Database user for Rewind Available character types Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0 -9), and underscores ( _ ) However, you cannot start with a number. Maximum string length 63 characters



Field	Default	Details
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserPassword	rewind_password	<p>Password for database user rewinduser</p> <p>Available character types</p> <p>Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0-9), symbols (~! @ # \$^ &amp; * () - = &lt; &gt; , . ? ; :  /+)</p>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsUser		<p>Optional</p> <p>user for FEPEXporter connection. Can be defined afterwards</p> <p>Available character types</p> <p>Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0-9), and underscores (_)</p> <p>However, you cannot start with a number.</p> <p>Upper case letters are treated as lower case letters.</p> <p>Maximum string length</p> <p>63 characters</p>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsUserPassword		<p>Optional</p> <p>Password for metrics user. Can be defined afterwards</p> <p>Available character types</p> <p>Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z), numbers (0-9), symbols (~! @ # \$^ &amp; * () - = &lt; &gt; , . ? ; :  /+)</p>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls.certificateName		<p>This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of Postgres user "postgres". Patroni will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt. This field is optional.</p>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls.caName		<p>This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt. This field is optional.</p>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls.sslMode	prefer	<p>Specify the type of TLS negotiation with the server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- disable</li> <li>- allow</li> <li>- prefer</li> <li>- require</li> <li>- verify-ca</li> <li>- verify-full</li> </ul>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgReplUserTls.certificateName		<p>This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of Postgres</p>

Field	Default	Details
		user "repluser". Patroni will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt. This field is optional.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgreplUserTls.caName		This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt. This field is optional.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgreplUserTls.sslMode	prefer	Specify the type of TLS negotiation with the server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- disable</li> <li>- allow</li> <li>- prefer</li> <li>- require</li> <li>- verify-ca</li> <li>- verify-full</li> </ul>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls.certificateName		This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of Postgres user "rewinduser". Patroni will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt. This field is optional.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls.caName		This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt. This field is optional.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls.sslMode	prefer	Specify the type of TLS negotiation with the server. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- disable</li> <li>- allow</li> <li>- prefer</li> <li>- require</li> <li>- verify-ca</li> <li>- verify-full</li> </ul>
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsUserTls.certificateName		Optional This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of Postgres user defined by pgMetricsUser. FEPEXporter will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsUserTls.caName		Optional This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client

Field	Default	Details
		use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt.
spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetric sUserTls.sslMode	prefer	Optional Specify the type of TLS negotiation when FEPEXporter connects to FEP server.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- disable</li> <li>- allow</li> <li>- prefer</li> <li>- require</li> <li>- verify-ca</li> <li>- verify-full</li> </ul>
spec.fepChildCrVal.systemCertificates. key		Use spec.fep.postgres.tls specification instead.
spec.fepChildCrVal.systemCertificates. crt		Use spec.fep.postgres.tls specification instead.
spec.fepChildCrVal.systemCertificates. cacrt		Use spec.fep.postgres.tls specification instead.
spec.fepChildCrVal.autoscale.scaleout. policy	off	[cpu_utilization/off]
spec.fepChildCrVal.autoscale.scaleout. threshold	40	Threshold (Average of all replicas) Must be an integer. The unit is %.
spec.fepChildCrVal.autoscale.limits.m axReplicas	2	Maximum number of replicas (0 to 15) (Value out of range) Do not perform auto scale-out

## Note

- (\*) - These parameters can be specified only at creation time and should not be changed. Any change to these parameters will be ignored and will not have any effect on FEP cluster functioning.
- (\*\*) - The storage volumes size can be increased provided underlying storage supports the operation. Optional volumes can be specified only at initial FEP cluster creation. If an optional volume is added later, operator will ignore it and no action will be taken.
- User should do or remove unsupported CR changes manually.
- spec.fep.postgres.tls CR specification should be used instead of spec.fepChildCrVal.systemCertificates. The lateral spec can still be used, however spec.fep.postgres.tls gives better flexibility to control MTLS access of the cluster.
- Either spec.fep.postgres.tls specification (old specification) or spec.fepChildCrVal.systemCertificates should be used. They should not be used interchangeable.
- Server certificate specified under spec.fep.postgres.tls can be rotated by changing the secret and executing reload ( e.g. using FEPAAction ); however for others specified in the CR, it is required to do restart of the PoDs

While in running state - following value will dynamically appear in the FEPCluster to reflect the cluster status

Field name	Details
status.fepStatus.fepClusterReady	Will be true or false to reflect if the whole cluster is ready. Kubernetes cluster information is fetched to check number of instances 'READY' & 'RUNNING' is equal to number of Configured instances.

### Note

"fepClusterReady" flag will be set at first FEPCluster creation time only. fepClusterReady flag does not participate in the next reconciliation loop)

## 1.2 Custom Resource Parameters

This section explains the Custom Resource Parameters.

### 1.2.1 FEPCluster Custom Resource Parameters

Category	Details
CRD Name	FEPCluster
Definition	<pre> apiVersion: apiextensions.k8s.io/v1 kind: CustomResourceDefinition metadata:   name: FEPClusters.fep.fujitsu.io spec:   group: fep.fujitsu.io   names:     kind: FEPCluster     listKind: FEPClusterList     plural: fepclusters     singular: fepcluster     shortNames:       - fac   scope: Namespaced   conversion:     strategy: None    versions:   - name: v2     served: true     storage: true     schema:       openAPIV3Schema:         description: FEPCluster is the Schema for the         fepclusters API         properties:           apiVersion:             description: 'APIVersion defines the versioned             schema of this representation             of an object. Servers should convert             recognized schemas to the latest             internal value, and may reject unrecognized             values. More info: https://git.k8s.io/community/             contributors/devel/sig-architecture/api-             conventions.md#resources'             type: string           kind:             description: 'Kind is a string value             representing the REST resource this </pre>

Category	Details
	<pre> object represents. Servers may infer this from the endpoint the client submits requests to. Cannot be updated. In CamelCase. More info: https://git.k8s.io/community/ contributors/devel/sig-architecture/api- conventions.md#types-kinds' type: string metadata: type: object spec: description: Spec defines the desired state of FEPCluster type: object x-kubernetes-preserve-unknown-fields: true status: description: Status defines the observed state of FEPCluster type: object x-kubernetes-preserve-unknown-fields: true type: object subresources: status: {} </pre>
Operations	<pre> Create: kubectl create -f fepcluster.yaml Delete: kubectl delete fepcluster &lt;clusername&gt; Update: kubectl apply -f fepcluster.yaml List: kubectl get fepcluster </pre>

#### FEPCluster CR Example

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v2
kind: FEPCluster
metadata:
  name: new-fep
  namespace: new-fep
spec:
  fep:
    forceSsl: true
    image:
      image: 'quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-server:ubi8-13-0.0'
      pullPolicy: IfNotPresent
    mcSpec:
      limits:
        cpu: 500m
        memory: 700Mi
      requests:
        cpu: 200m
        memory: 512Mi
    podAntiAffinity: true
    podDisruptionBudget: true
    instances: '3'
    servicePort: 27500
    syncMode: 'on'
    sysExtraLogging: false
    replicationSlots: |
      demo_subscription1:
        type: logical
        database: postgres
        plugin: pgoutput
      demo_subscription2:

```

```

        type: logical
        database: postgres
        plugin: pgoutput
demo_subscription3:
        type: logical
        database: postgres
        plugin: pgoutput
fepChildCrVal:
  customCertificates:
    - userName: my_cert_folder1
      certificateName: my_cert1_secret
      caName: my_ca_configmap
      privateKeyPassword: my_cert1_key_secret
    - userName: my_cert_folder2
      certificateName: my_cert2_secret
      caName: my_ca2_configmap
      privateKeyPassword: my_cert2_key_secret
  customPgAudit: |
    # define pg audit custom params here to override defaults.
    # if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
    # changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'
    [output]
    logger = 'auditlog'
    log_directory = '/database/log/audit'
    log_truncate_on_rotation = on
    log_filename = 'pgaudit-%a.log'
    log_rotation_age = 1d
    log_rotation_size = 0
    [rule]

  customPgHba: |
    # define pg_hba custom rules here to be merged with default rules.
    # TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS      METHOD

  customPgParams: |+
    # define custom postgresql.conf parameters below to override defaults.
    # Current values are as per default FEP deployment
    shared_preload_libraries='pgx_datamasking,pgaudit,pg_prewarm, pg_stat_statements'
    session_preload_libraries='pg_prewarm'
    max_prepared_transactions = 100
    max_worker_processes = 30
    max_connections = 100
    work_mem = 1MB
    maintenance_work_mem = 12MB
    shared_buffers = 128MB
    effective_cache_size = 384MB
    checkpoint_completion_target = 0.8
    pgx_global_metacache = 10MB

    # tcp parameters
    tcp_keepalives_idle = 30
    tcp_keepalives_interval = 10
    tcp_keepalives_count = 3

    # logging parameters in default fep installation
    # if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
    # changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'
    log_directory = '/database/log'
    log_filename = 'logfile-%a.log'
    log_file_mode = 0600
    log_truncate_on_rotation = on
    log_rotation_age = 1d

```

```

log_rotation_size = 0
log_checkpoints = on
log_line_prefix = '%e %t [%p]: [%l-1] user=%u,db=%d,app=%a,client=%h'
log_lock_waits = on
log_autovacuum_min_duration = 60s
logging_collector = on
pgaudit.config_file='/opt/app-root/src/pgaudit-cfg/pgaudit.conf'
log_replication_commands = on
log_min_messages = WARNING
log_destination = stderr

# wal_archive parameters in default fep installation
archive_mode = on
archive_command = 'pgbackrest --stanza=backupstanza --config=/database/userdata/pgbackrest.conf
archive-push %p'
wal_level = replica
max_wal_senders = 10
wal_keep_segments = 64
wal_sender_timeout = 60s
track_activities = on
track_counts = on

backup:
  image:
    image: 'quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-backup:ubi8-13-0.0'
    pullPolicy: IfNotPresent
  mcSpec:
    limits:
      cpu: 200m
      memory: 300Mi
    requests:
      cpu: 100m
      memory: 200Mi
  pgbackrestParams: |
    # define custom pgbackrest.conf parameters below to override defaults.
    [global]
    repol-retention-full = 30
    repol-retention-full-type = time
  preScript: " "
  postScript: " "
  schedule:
    num: 2
  schedule1:
    schedule: "15 0 * * 0"
    type: "full"
  schedule2:
    schedule: "15 0 * * 1-6"
    type: "incr"
  schedule3:
    schedule: " "
    type: " "
  schedule4:
    schedule: " "
    type: " "
  schedule5:
    schedule: " "
    type: " "

storage:
  dataVol:
    size: 2Gi
  tablespaceVol:

```

```
size: 512Mi
walVol:
size: 1200Mi
archivewalVol:
size: 1Gi
backupVol:
size: 2Gi
logVol:
size: 1Gi

sysUsers:
pgAdminPassword: admin-password
pgdb: mydb
pgpassword: mydbpassword
pguser: mydbuser
pgrepluser: repluser
pgreplpassword: repluserpwd
tdepassphrase: tde-passphrase
```

systemCertificates:

```
key: |-
-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
MIIEpAIBAABAAQEAhL4D/01Lmm/Ry3nu+jgLOdLYEEg0wqMxhsyPRb43paWSF1p
gX1CNAPz1EtNs4LVGSd6n7TqV73MfZ41NHpuVtjWVTS6wtf7dQj7bbKewQCDF5bK
QpekP5HAv/5uQ4Bx154FppJvMMX6CtUBm9ici8X7M1GrPQ5uir7kj8SrUkSpXdkp
wqyuEufvbenayCI8KapBcTAsRIMjWufWngriln4b8ZYiVh0mcHLrX8HWTmQJvqBh
9laEwgn/KItPwQVp8dcZlilt+H6gBECd6n4q0/v1x0J2MoVK63Q+zZ7Y3ox5qSNN
+/Kgacht916AcEzIoJ52pa4vneLwErKX6kJMRwIDAQABAoIBAF2vH9FRrlq4CGyR
6vw1Zfj776z7rOAYPRaP5Q0zO2sKsfvrBhOq12yn3fdj0bMq8zm4ubnqA+9HP31S
72eUSLpJmirZGixcDYFPVfuSBn6JKMF0Z9M+snSXzCfTqMHPb19LcLsJH0sq+Q
GYDlHRPpe2bgBARoCDIESK0j9IVRNitWOzZCarjLzjlyNSS4vPaEjAySW/XxuRzi
A5smx2zXVm55+FjJpc2+H4Q+Rd+0AdLKrRAOyGCLMG3X5iYgwBTjzRKmdHJoIsnI
em+kJYxChSaJFK+2uzJ1+L1W9d+7CtEDxIyMKxv1TaF79agzJI7MvotGGvnnLaTP
KTTODAEcGYEA6h5h/OP9oB+1WM4xhQAmtnpwWOhQPKjMAYI0XZfzWMKBrzEKKk8p
k1bZIM24xUzMSb/hKvcqcraxYN21IUmgCDspbu0xMG6vNzqjAH0TtK8HhYoIhhKl
hGVYV3vToTeJns3SL391IedhCOgVx1bPkHDS61V97Hdd9WIanp/8RwECgYEAz9bC
A+aMbe3+1xLaoQ2j+54QaE/TbP+bbuP6Rc1H8OP1C1ZEPT1p3I4+mAlTyMq8Reit
4CmSvvpHWXpOnNVCyHHerWCySxyV5Mcp33RARX5xN109TTUEgqoH2daTieM/KY6
rakqerh7cwSGX0IXcB+N00ApBs7Bjph2g3FNm0cCgYEAjneot2TiLTO+fmkTd1UN
OdQuU9wjH5a0dmKOjTnvat8KXdrzgbhYm4GpJa4qt12xn1t1oVjBawDz6dxW11M
g+vEne0XFtr0Iw66rIwxlm5Ajh37Q81LDdNCPBjtSVjrlUi41BDZMRWFVg8tWZ25
N7OAlfsqYucMu8tUWZ0PvWEcGYA7xefGd2erteaitCnUZ7fhhXPYjAKiNmDdy3N2
37Lw9J5kxEqboi2/4KjF0M7n0GavNHXNIeyBQJAEwyrXD/5FXx5LfqPIN1Blm2H
Pgf95/QNSPz6CFRLfAUeAvtVvsotXyFBEIXHBYd7bLG4c6mJ9YkzqUQjURL7pp1u
8AcBwQKBgQCi149QxQsbnakltQsYG5e+vo49GBjrpA7HeZDGq5oJGShAIMq0JSuv
t+dwgfl0xAw65jkbH6hNqVLF4xdZPV6Ka2bHNCpGK7b0rWqQVvyjp1M14dgIhPN6
tNZgz3cDtHwb3VCHN3APGLcIZDazZbjOMqLWBq/euhdcLnyuB9jBww==
-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
```

```
crt: |-
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIEHjCCAawagAwIBAgIJANroZLqsw8hNMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBwUAMBYxFDASBgNV
BAMMCzEwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
aDELMAkGA1UEBhMCOTExFDASBgNVBAGMC01haGfyYXNodHJhMQ0wCwYDVQQHDARQ
dW51MRAdDgYDVQKDAAdGwppdHh1MQwwCgYDVQQQLDANDT0UxFDASBgNVBAMMCzEw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUw
LjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
Ljk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0
MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEz
MS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4wLjk5
MjU0MTUwLjEzMS4w
```



```
AQUFBwMCMIGVbGnVHREegY0wgYqCCmt1YmVybmV0ZXOCmt1YmVybmV0ZXMuzGVm
YXVsdIIWa3ViZXJlcy5kZWZhdWw0LnN2Y4Tea3ViZXJlcy5kZWZhdWw0
LnN2Yy5jbHVzdGVygiRrdWJlcm5ldGVzLmRlZmFlbHQuc3ZjLmNsdXN0ZXIubG9j
YWyHBAQDAGOHBKweVvkdQYJKoZIhvcNAQELBQADggEBADBIpMWGoIdMAriPoFE/
f3Iwq2VMwr/NBg8ZgQd8l7+IIHooMP+1/nj2juy7enyrlFPiqRvhXADBkvZThro2
4c+1bDbEbW0HqdwUnRWwwBEeillXq4m6voWXXIA+At7fdiK7Dr7fo2OX5nDgW1Tw
btxCooqdUee/m9EgvHLmOLhuI3E1654zP6FVB2r1XN/oXeEzefPE18VqSvk7eZ/hR
adqpK3yt3lLeFVQzqfXzcoxOCM7Bt0txVNN4a9NwBoF8abaHxVoKI3rZlXQFpkn+
RCHx6QtaVDnLJ8jlykXCv8i7Qz+3Nwh0zszl3aM8Rt3Pd+PRjc9VGg5kXBMoRzi2
xuo=
```

```
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

```
cacrt: |-
```

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
```

```
MIIC/zCAeegAwIBAgIJALVXqSrSHuA+MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMBYxFDASBgNV
BAMMCzEwLjEzMS4wLjlk5MB4XDTIwMTEwODE0MjUyOVVoXDTQ4MDMyNjE0MjUyOVow
FjEUMBIGALUEAwLMTAUMTMxLjAuOTkwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAw
ggEKAoIBAQLD7F1I69s5QY+NaZMEHVw4cksMdmxsNerSdBpZaHaTVLSGod5SeqK8
EGL0NPua2KccjZritDLdYx8F1TrPqTie9N7Q1EDoiLi2AMrP8DEykGA304JtOXzs
yGGwmodgdqJORhewmYefiKej6483Ahy3bXORG4WbmouId1Ou7CmrH6VXTcP8sgmc
OLEEc9n33C/Ymw1lggJk6fM/ysZKSic2wiePFPVo86tXJ5k8pRpGJZfGfGJ80Idx
EEyWlr7GRnNm1ZQVD7A4meNarA14Bc/6b/uBtL+WySW7wvqUIua+e4Sp1X4mMbj8
IqZLEzsgvaKpDFT02+jQivqMCD8OG2jHAgMBAAGjUDBOMB0GAlUDgQWBBS3HR34
9kxeBvVEwpbh6hqCYhSuMTAfBgNVHSMEGDAWgBS3HR349kxeBvVEwpbh6hqCYhSu
MTAMBgNVHRMBETADAQH/MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA4IBAQAiXOC/idXXeygT8UzH
k3biEs3iRwaJdAlWVONOpnj8q75F4zIaGhCKvU/kfdOg9cwVy3GJq5+1LhR8qtCC
5o5iOHTS+XqyDXiv52Xe+GyY6GvtVUMd/KSHSInF2xgPUDInWdggqFHC5bwNF2r8
yxHuNzUzEuu9xVzaqi7Wxk8t+uiktS4GgtcK94Zk8EkAxfnQe5PGa2ijcOF90whX
OCmhcT1CBXu4jgO3kfnuJ8E3A3gaN5I+VnqvvnPxpbg3G0mMhxr3pruTuCOBgqFM
CUDBZqNBD5wezjJImdnvS50LGx1CKgelrxP2NamzblgMAms7XzfKxa51Tszaeqna
wuC4
```

```
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

It should also be noted that all the passwords / passphrase and certificates will be masked after the creation of the CR. This includes

- Also, initial pgAdminPassword: admin-password
- pgpassword: mydbpassword
- pgreplpassword: repluserpwd
- tdepassphrase: tde-passphrase
- pgRewindPassword: rewind\_password (Optional - if defined)
- pgMetricsPassword: metrics\_password (Optional - if defined)
- certificate.key
- certificate.crt
- certificate.cacrt

Values of child CRs at the time of initial deployment of cluster, are stored in FEPCluster under fepChildCrVals, e.g. for Server certificates, Configuration of FEP, User details.

All fields for FEPCluster CR and its child CRs should be managed through FEPCluster CR only. Operator will reflect the changes to respective child CR to be processed. The fields that not allowed to change will not be reflected from parent to child CR and hence will not have any affect.

## 1.2.2 FEP Cluster Configuration

Configuration of all aspects of FEP Cluster is done through FEPCluster CR only.

All fields for FEPCluster CR and its child CRs should be managed through FEPCluster CR only. Operator will reflect the changes to respective child CR to be processed. The fields that not allowed to change will not be reflected from parent to child CR and hence will not have any affect. Refer to "1.1 FEPCluster Parameter" for details.

All child CRs are marked as internal objects in RedHat OCP and will not appear on console. However, it can be checked on command line using oc or kubectl commands.

Following table shows Child CRs of FEPCluster CR and respective sections in parent CR related to given child CR.

Configuration changes are made in these sections will update allowable fields only in corresponding child CR.

Child CR Name	Relevant sections in FEP Cluster CR
FEPBackup	spec.fepChildCrVal.backup
FEPcert	spec.fepChildCrVal.systemCertificates
FEPConfig	spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgAudit spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgHba spec.fepChildCrVal.customPgParams
FEPUser	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers
FEPVolume	spec.fepChildCrVal.storage

### 1.2.3 FEPConfig Child Custom Resource Parameters

Field	Default	Details
metadata.name	<same-as-in-FEPCluster>	This value is inherited from parent FEPCluster CR
metadata.namespace	<same-as-in-FEPCluster>	This value is inherited from parent FEPCluster CR
spec.customPgAudit	All line specified in spec.fepChildCrVal.customPg Audit of FEPCluster CR	Audit rules can be updated in this section. Requires restart. Note: initial values inherited once only at start. Changes to FEPConfig directly
spec.customPgHba	All line specified in spec.fepChildCrVal.customPg Hba of FEPCluster CR	pg_hba rules can be added in this section Note: Inherited once at start. Changes to FEPConfig directly
spec.customPgParams	All line specified in spec.fepChildCrVal.customPg Params of FEPCluster CR	All postgres parameters are listed here to overwrite defaults. Note: Inherited once at start. Changes to FEPConfig directly
spec.replicationSlots		Optional: Details of replication slots if defined in FEPCluster

Example of FEPConfig CR created

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPConfig
metadata:
  name: new-fep-19ncfg
  namespace: cfg-expt
spec:
  sysExtraLogging: false
  customPgAudit: |
    # define pg audit custom params here to override defaults.

```

```

# if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
# changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'
[output]
logger = 'auditlog'
log_directory = '/database/log/audit'
log_truncate_on_rotation = on
log_filename = 'pgaudit-%a.log'
log_rotation_age = 1d
log_rotation_size = 0
[rule]

customPgHba: |
# define pg_hba custom rules here to be merged with default rules.
# TYPE      DATABASE      USER      ADDRESS      METHOD
customPgParams: |+
# define custom postgresql.conf parameters below to override defaults.
# Current values are as per default FEP deployment
shared_preload_libraries='pgx_datamasking,pgaudit,pg_prewarm,pg_stat_statements'
session_preload_libraries='pg_prewarm'
max_prepared_transactions = 100
max_worker_processes = 20
max_connections = 100
work_mem = 1MB
maintenance_work_mem = 20MB
shared_buffers = 128MB
effective_cache_size = 384MB
checkpoint_completion_target = 0.8
pgx_global_metacache = 10MB
temp_buffers = 10MB

# tcp parameters
tcp_keepalives_idle = 30
tcp_keepalives_interval = 10
tcp_keepalives_count = 3

# logging parameters in default fep installation
# if log volume is not defined, log_directory should be
# changed to '/database/userdata/data/log'    log_directory = '/database/log'
log_filename = 'logfile-%a.log'
log_file_mode = 0600
log_truncate_on_rotation = on
log_rotation_age = 1d
log_rotation_size = 0
log_checkpoints = on
log_line_prefix = '%e %t [%p]: [%l-1] user=%u,db=%d,app=%a,client=%h'
log_lock_waits = on
log_autovacuum_min_duration = 60s
logging_collector = on
pgaudit.config_file= '/opt/app-root/src/pgaudit-cfg/pgaudit.conf'
log_replication_commands = on
log_min_messages = WARNING
log_destination = stderr

# wal_archive parameters in default fep installation
archive_mode = on
wal_level = replica
max_wal_senders = 10
wal_keep_segments = 64
wal_sender_timeout = 60s
track_activities = on
track_counts = on

```

## 1.2.4 FEPUser Child Custom Resource Parameters

Field	Default	Details
metadata.name	<same-as-in-FEPCluster>	This value is inherited from parent FEPCluster CR
metadata.namespace	<same-as-in-FEPCluster>	This value is inherited from parent FEPCluster CR
spec.pgAdminPassword	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.pgAdminPassword of FEPCluster CR	postgres superuser password. Masked once secret is created/changed  Note: initial values inherited once only at start. Changes to FEPUser directly
spec.pgdb	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.pgdb of FEPCluster CR	Name of a user database  Note: Created once only at start. Cannot be changed
spec.pgpassword	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.pgpassword of FEPCluster CR	Password for superuser for user database pgdb. Masked once secret is created/changed  Note: initial values inherited once only at start. Changes to FEPUser directly
spec.pguser	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.pguser of FEPCluster CR	Name of a user database  Note: Created once only at start. Cannot be changed
spec.pgrepluser	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.pgrepluser of FEPCluster CR	Name of a database user for replication
spec.pgreplpassword	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.pgreplpassword of FEPCluster CR	Password for pgrepluser
spec.tdepassphrase	spec.fepChildCrVal.users.tdepassphrase of FEPCluster CR	Passphrase for encrypting/decrypting keystore file which contains the TDE encryption key
spec.pgRewindUser	rewind_user	Database user for Rewind
spec.pgRewindUserPassword	rewind_password	Password for database user rewinduser
spec.pgMetricsUser	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsUser	Optional See details in FEPCluster CR
spec.pgMetricsPassword	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsPassword	Optional See details in FEPCluster CR
spec.pgAdminTls	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgAdminTls	Optional section See details in FEPCluster CR
spec.pgrepluserTls	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgrepluserTls	Optional section See details in FEPCluster CR
spec.pgRewindUserTls	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgRewindUserTls	Optional section See details in FEPCluster CR
spec.pgMetricsUserTls	spec.fepChildCrVal.sysUsers.pgMetricsUserTls	Optional section See details in FEPCluster CR

## Example of FEPUser CR created

```
apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPUser
metadata:
  name: new-fep-19n
  namespace: testswatiproject
spec:
  pgAdminPassword: '*****'
  pgdb: mydb
  pgpassword: '*****'
  pgreplpassword: '*****'
  pgrepluser: repluser
  pguser: mydbuser
  tdepassphrase: '*****'
  sysExtraLogging: false
  pgRewindUser: rewind_user
  pgRewindUserPassword: rewind_password
  pgAdminTls:
    certificateName: admin-client-certs-secret
    caName: admin-ssl-rootcert-configmap
    sslMode: prefer
  pgrepluserTls:
    certificateName: repluser-client-certs-secret
    caName: repluser-ca-name-configmap
    sslMode: prefer
  pgRewindUserTls:
    certificateName: rewinduser-client-certs-secret
    caName: rewinduser-ca-name-configmap
    sslMode: prefer
```

### Note

- Password and Passphrase are masked in output from CR. The original values can still be found in the respective Kubernetes secrets and configmaps.
- TDE is enabled by default with given tdepassphrase and must have a value.
- TDE is enabled by using the key tdepassphrase with the desired passphrase. Do not remove this key once TDE is enabled. Otherwise, the database may go into a crash loop. If the Cluster is running on Async Replication and a failover/switchover occurred during the crash loop, there could be data lost. The team is looking at preventing the deletion of this passphrase from Operator even if customer tries to remove it in customer resource.
- Database users and their passwords managed by the FEPUser CR should not be changed in the SQL interface. Inconsistencies with the information managed by the operator can cause problems with operator operation. If you make changes in the SQL interface, use the SQL interface again to restore the original state.

## 1.2.5 FEPVolume Child Custom Resource Parameters

### 1.2.5.1 Create Volumes

Volumes for the cluster nodes(pods) are initially created in accordance with the values set in `fepChildCrVal`' storage section of the parent FEPCluster CR.

The parent FEPCluster CR creates a child FEPVolume CR with the respective startup values and the relevant controller(FEPColume Controller) takes care of creating the required volumes.

### Note

- After you create the FEPCluster for the first time, you cannot add new volumes later or modify the storageClass or accessModes.

- You can resize the initially created volume only if the underlying storageClass supports dynamic resizing.

Below is the schema of the FEPVolume CR:

Field	Mandatory	Sub-Field	Default	Description
archivewalVol	No	size	1Gi	Volume size of the archive log.  Refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server to help you design the size.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
backupVol	No	size	2Gi	Volume size of the backup.  Estimate based on the following formula: (full backup generations + incr backup generations + 1) * dataVol size
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
dataVol	Yes	size	2Gi	Volume size of the data.  Refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server and base the design on table/index size.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
logVol	No	size	1Gi	Volume size of the log.  If you change the log output level (default: WARNING), measure the actual amount of log output in a test environment.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
tablespaceVol	No	size	512Mi	Volume size of the tablespace.  When using tablespaces, as with dataVol, you should refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU

Field	Mandatory	Sub-Field	Default	Description
				Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server for information on sizing.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start
walVol	Yes	size	1200Mi	Volume size of the transaction log. Refer to "Estimating Database Disk Space Requirements" in the FUJITSU Enterprise Postgres Installation and Setup Guide for Server to help you design the size. Note that the default value for max_wal_size is 1 GB.
		storageClass	Defaults to platform default if omitted	SC is only set at start
		accessModes	Defaults to ReadWriteOnce if omitted	Access mode is only set at start

The 'accessMode' is been incorporated for the inclusion of pgBadger layer later. Giving it a shared volume capability will allow pgBadger Container to read logs from multiple server instance ( master / replica ) and expose it via a WebServer.

## 1.2.5.2 Delete Volumes

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl delete FEPVolume <cr_name>`

This operation will remove all the PVCs and possibly PVs depending on the default reclaimPolicy of the storageclass used per volume.

With right backup and restore integration by customer, they may not need volumes to be persisted.



### Note

Do not delete this CR unless the Cluster has been removed.

Example of FEPVolume CR created

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPVolume
metadata:
  name: new-fep-19n
  namespace: testswatiproject
spec:
  archivewalVol:
    size: 1Gi
  backupVol:
    size: 2Gi
  dataVol:
    size: 2Gi
  logVol:
    size: 1Gi
  tablespaceVol:
    size: 512Mi
  walVol:
    size: 1Gi
  selectedVolList:

```

```

- name: data
- name: tablespace
- name: wal
- name: log
sysExtraLogging: false

```

## 1.2.6 FEPCert Child Custom Resource Parameters

### 1.2.6.1 Create/ Update Certificates

Certificate secret for the FEP cluster is initially created in accordance with the values set in `fepChildCrVal`' `certs` section of the parent FEPCluster CR.

Below is the schema of the FEPCert CR:

Field	Default	Description
<code>cacrt</code>	Defaults to dummy self signed crt from parent FEPCluster CR	Can be replaced with customer's own CA cert
<code>crt</code>	Defaults to dummy self signed crt from parent FEPCluster CR	Can be replaced with customer's own trusted cert
<code>key</code>	Defaults to dummy key from parent FEPCluster CR	Can be replaced with customer's own key

By default, Operator will create Kubernetes secrets to store the CA Cert, Server Cert and Key file. These files are exposed under the mount point `/fep-certs` in the container. The default FEPCluster template will also set the following postgres parameters in `postgresql.conf`.

```

ssl = on
ssl_cert_file = '/fep-certs/fep.crt'
ssl_key_file = '/fep-certs/fep.key'
ssl_ca_file = '/fep-certs/ca.crt'

```

It should also be possible to change the certificates by end user, by changing ALL `key`, `crt` and `cacrt`. However, user will need to restart the cluster to let change take effect.

### 1.2.6.2 Delete Certificates

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl delete FEPCert <cr_name>`

This operation will remove the secret containing the TLS Certificates and keys for the cluster.

Below is an example CR for certificates to be used by FEP server container

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPCert
metadata:
  name: new-fep
  namespace: ansible-operator-poc
spec:
  key: |-
    -----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----
    MIIEowIBAAKCAQEAA4AI33yvHZws+jta6qpV6wzJqF8odIfTIpCfbrVcUUtLfkj1I
    2e4SceTKi603C/I1XuvWlpng5IO65+fQQL006z1/AuQT78YUn/Wlm9x1aHVsv4AN
    B5JWWqDQjrt3o7nRPGXfilabP0rGE2mJjCVR9nExJ3IeaktgT3sb8YlXvtchyYp
    mjdbfxabTz07ig0+6/cwKORRxoK8Uf7f5euE0cI/490J6r5Rs41gD8sIQNCUF1TF
    YvmAH7gcdssSFbt8NP1UATHESofm1W0DKCJWNhTLOht+s6L/1zwTHLjPG2pdkgG6W
    dgmu5H2pDml8CDNLDv98Aj7i+I5SRKkcVPlnuQIDAQABAoIBAFAFPQYKlOzw/+BA0b
    yMIUpdctIMb/54CR/xR0mVw1DbSjigNVPjHUQvB8Y1B2FAITQObgJ006bAv0QdWN
    Rb0/v/yYiNJDFjaLjaIAHlO/2+oWrXbFaZqgpVDJhB+e1xaZr2x7XGxm+p925k30
    16pvIRY+I8JRKvZiV1VZHwL/R3JOtPr++xMZtLVjVOI+f+ySgJ+TZHuAjm49EKxj

```







This approach of specifying FEPCerts is getting deprecated. Should follow Secrets as referred in section to configure Certs for Server, Patroni and Users.

## 1.2.7 FEPBackup Child Custom Resource Parameters

Field	Default	Details
apiVersion	fep.fujitsu.io/v1	Fixed
kind	FEPBackup	Fixed
metadata.name	<clustername>	Enter the CR name.
spec.pgbackrestParams	" "	" " It is fixed, and the parameter set in pgbackrest.conf is described from the line below.
spec.schedule.num	Integer	Number of schedules to set The maximum number of backup schedules is 5.
spec.scheduleN.schedule	-	Write the date and time of the Nth schedule in cron format. The date and time is UTC time.
spec.scheduleN.type	full/incr	full: Perform a full backup (Back up the contents of the database cluster). incr – Perform an incremental backup (Back up only the database cluster files that were changed to the last backup migration).
spec.preScript	" "	This parameter must specify a default value.
spec.postScript	" "	This parameter must specify a default value.

Example of FEPBackup CR created

```
apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPBackup
metadata:
  name: fepcluster-backup
spec:
  schedule:
    num : 2
  schedule1:
    schedule : "0 0 1 * *"
    type : "full"
  schedule2:
    schedule : "0 0 1-6 * *"
    type : "incr"
  preScript: " "
  postScript: " "
  pgbackrestParams: |
    # define custom pgbackrest.conf parameters below to override defaults.
    [global]
    rep1-retention-full = 30
    rep1-retention-full-type = time
  ...
```

## 1.2.8 FEPRestore Custom Resource Parameters

Field	Default	Details
apiVersion	fep.fujitsu.io/v1	Fixed
kind	FEPRestore	Fixed
metadata.name	-	Enter the CR name.
spec.image	<current-released-image>	FEP restore container image to be used quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-restore:ubi8-13-0.0 It is optional. Image is left blank by default. In such a case, it will pick up URL of image from operator container environment. If you specify the image, Operator will take that image to deploy container
spec.imagePullPolicy	IfNotPresent	
spec.mcSpec.limits	cpu: 0.2 memory: "300Mi"	
spec.mcSpec.requests	cpu: 0.1 memory: "200Mi"	
spec.fromFEPcluster	<from_clustername>	The name of the FEPcluster from which to restore
spec.toFEPcluster	<to_clustername>	Name of the FEPcluster to restore to The exact restore destination volume is retrieved from FEPcluster
spec.restoretype	latest/PITR	latest - Restore Latest State PITR - Date-Time Restore
spec.restoredate	-	If spec.restoretype is PITR, specify the day of PITR (UTC) in YYYY-MM-DD format Be sure to use single quotes. Example) '2020-11-25'
spec.restoretime	-	If spec.restoretype is PITR, specifies the PITR time (UTC) in HH: MM: SS format Be sure to use single quotes. Example) '02:50:43'

Example of FEPRestore CR created

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPRestore
metadata:
  name: feprestore
spec:
  mcSpec:
    limits:
      cpu: 200m
      memory: 300Mi
    requests:
      cpu: 100m
      memory: 200Mi
  fromFEPcluster: fepcluster1

```

```

toFEPcluster: fepcluster2
restoretype: latest
imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent

```

### Example of Point-In-Time-Recovery using FEPRestore CR

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPRestore
metadata:
  name: feprestore
spec:
  mcSpec:
    limits:
      cpu: 300m
      memory: 700Mi
    requests:
      cpu: 200m
      memory: 512Mi
  fromFEPcluster: fepclusterA
  toFEPcluster: fepclusterB
  restoretype: PITR
  restoredate: 2020-11-25
  restoretime: 02:50:43
  imagePullPolicy: IfNotPresent

```

## 1.2.9 FEPPgpool2 Custom Resource Parameters

Equivalent Kubernetes command: `kubectl create FEPPgpool2`

This operation will create a PGPool2 with supplied information.

Field	Default	Details
apiVersion	fep.fujitsu.io/v1	Fixed
kind	FEPPgpool2	Fixed
metadata.name	-	List the name of the FEP Pgpool2 container.
metadata.namespace	-	Specify the namespace of the environment where you want to deploy the operator.
spec.image	<current-released-image>	FEPPgpool2 container image to be used quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-pgpool2:ubi8-13-0.0 It is optional. Image is left blank by default. In such a case, it will pick up URL of image from operator container environment. If you specify the image, Operator will take that image to deploy container.
spec.count	2	List the number of FEP Pgpool2 containers to create.
spec.serviceport	9999	Describes the TCP port for connecting to the FEP Pgpool2 container.
spec.statusport	9898	Identifies the TCP port for connecting to the PCP process.
spec.limits.cpu	400m	List the number of CPUs (restriction) to allocate to resources.limits.cpu.

Field	Default	Details
spec.limits.memory	512Mi	Specifies the memory size (restriction) to allocate to resources.limits.memory.
spec.requests.cpu	200m	List the number of CPUs (request) to allocate to resources.requests.cpu.
spec.requests.memory	256Mi	Specifies the memory size (request) to allocate to resources.requests.memory
spec.fepclustername	new-fep	Enter the FEPCluster name to connect to.
spec.customhba		If you want to use pool_hba.conf, describe what pool_hba.conf should contain from the line below.
spec.customparams	listen_addresses = '*' pcp_listen_addresses = '*' num_init_children = 32 reserved_connections = 0 enable_pool_hba = off allow_clear_text_frontend_auth = off authentication_timeout = 80 backend_weight0 = 1 backend_weight1 = 1 backend_flag0 = 'ALWAYS_PRIMARY' backend_flag1 = 'DISALLOW_TO_FAILOVER' connection_cache = on max_pool = 4 listen_backlog_multiplier = 2 serialize_accept = off child_life_time = 300 client_idle_limit = 0 child_max_connections = 0 connection_life_time = 0 reset_query_list = 'ABORT; DISCARD ALL' client_min_messages = info log_min_messages = debug1 log_statement = on log_per_node_statement = on log_client_messages = on log_hostname = on log_connections = on	" " and the Pgpool-II parameters. Refer to " <a href="#">Pgpool-II parameters</a> " for detail.

Field	Default	Details
	log_line_prefix = '%t: pid %p: ' load_balance_mode = on ignore_leading_white_space = on white_function_list = " black_function_list = 'currval,lastval,nextval,setval' black_query_pattern_list = " database_redirect_preference_list = " app_name_redirect_preference_list = " allow_sql_comments = off disable_load_balance_on_write = 'transaction' statement_level_load_balance = on sr_check_period = 0 sr_check_user = 'postgres' delay_threshold = 0 log_standby_delay = 'none' ssl = on ssl_ciphers = 'HIGH:MEDIUM:+3DES:!aNULL' ssl_prefer_server_ciphers = off ssl_ecdh_curve = 'prime256v1' ssl_dh_params_file = " relcache_expire = 0 relcache_size = 256 check_temp_table = catalog check_unlogged_table = on enable_shared_relcache = on relcache_query_target = primary wd_port0 = 9000	
spec.custompcp	" "	If you use the pcp command, " " and the contents of pcp.conf from the line below.
spec.customsslkey	" "	If you want to do it, " " and the Beethoven key content in the line below.
spec.customsslcert	" "	If you want to do it, " " and the contents of the public x 509 certificate from the line below.

Field	Default	Details
spec.customsslcert	" "	If you want to do it, " " and the following lines describe the contents of the CA root certificate in PEM format.
spec.customlogsize	100 Mi	Specifies the persistent volume size for log output.
spec.storageclassname		Specifies the storage class for log output.

## Pgpool-II parameters

The parameters that can be specified are shown in the table below. For details on the parameters, refer to the Pgpool-II manual.

Category	Parameter name (Specified format)	Restart required after change
<b>Connection settings</b>	listen_addresses (string)	Y
	pcp_listen_addresses (string)	Y
	num_init_children (integer)	Y
	reserved_connections (integer)	Y
<b>Authentication settings</b>	enable_pool_hba (boolean)	
	allow_clear_text_frontend_auth (boolean)	
	authentication_timeout (integer)	
<b>Backend settings</b>	backend_weight0 (floating point)	
	backend_weight1 (floating point)	
	backend_flag0	
	backend_flag1	
<b>Connection pooling</b>	connection_cache (boolean)	Y
	max_pool (integer)	Y
	listen_backlog_multiplier (integer)	Y
	serialize_accept (boolean)	Y
	child_life_time (integer)	Y
	client_idle_limit (integer)	
	child_max_connections (integer)	Y
	connection_life_time (integer)	Y
reset_query_list (string)		
<b>Error reporting and log acquisition</b>	client_min_messages (enum)	
	log_min_messages (enum)	
	log_statement (boolean)	
	log_per_node_statement (boolean)	
	log_client_messages (boolean)	
	log_hostname (boolean)	
	log_connections (boolean)	
	log_error_verbosity (enum)	
log_line_prefix (string)		
<b>Load sharing settings</b>	load_balance_mode (boolean)	Y
	ignore_leading_white_space (boolean)	

Category	Parameter name (Specified format)	Restart required after change
	white_function_list (string)	
	black_function_list (string)	
	black_query_pattern_list (string)	
	database_redirect_preference_list (string)	
	app_name_redirect_preference_list (string)	
	allow_sql_comments (boolean)	
	disable_load_balance_on_write (string)	Y
	statement_level_load_balance (boolean)	
<b>Health check</b>	connect_timeout (integer)	
<b>Streaming replication check</b>	sr_check_period (integer)	
	sr_check_user (string)	
	sr_check_password (string)	
	sr_check_database (string)	
	delay_threshold (integer)	
	log_standby_delay (string)	
<b>Secure Socket Layer (SSL)</b>	ssl (boolean)	Y
	ssl_ciphers (string)	Y
	ssl_prefer_server_ciphers (boolean)	Y
	ssl_ecdh_curve (string)	Y
	ssl_dh_params_file (string)	Y
<b>Other parameters</b>	relcache_expire (integer)	Y
	relcache_size (integer)	Y
	enable_shared_relcache (boolean)	Y
	relcache_query_target (enum)	
	check_temp_table (enum)	
	check_unlogged_table (boolean)	

## 1.2.10 FEPAAction Custom Resource Parameters

Specify parameters in the format described below.

Custom resource spec	Change effect
.spec.targetClusterName	Must specify target FEP Cluster name within namespace mentioned in metadata.
.spec.targetPgpool2Name	Must specify target FEPPgpool2 name within namespace mentioned in metadata when using pgpool2_restart.
.spec.fepAction.type	Must specify action type.  Supported action types are: restart pod_restart reload list



Custom resource spec	Change effect
	switchover failover pgpool2_restart
.spec.fepAction.args	Must specify arguments needed for given action. For details of args corresponding to each action refer to " <a href="#">1.2.10.1 FEPAction Specific Operation Details</a> ".
.spec.sysExtraLogging	To turn extra debugging on, set value to true. It can be turned on/off at any time.

After execution of FEPAction CR, status is reflected in fepStatus field that is dynamically inserted in current FEPAction CR as needed. fepStatus field used for FEPAction CR are described here

fepStatus ( with possible values )	Remarks
fepActionStatus:	fepStatus is inserted at the top of FEPAction CR
fepActionCondition: Success   Failure	This flag is inserted in fepAction CR to reflect success or failure of requested action
fepActionResult: > "details"	The result contains verbose details corresponding to the specific action been executed. Should be noted that it is either plain text of HTTP output.
processedTimestamp: <time stamp>	Denotes time of action execution by the Operator

```

apiVersion: fep.fujitsu.io/v1
kind: FEPAction
fepActionStatus:
  fepActionCondition: Success
metadata:
  name: new-fep-reload-action
  namespace: myns
spec:
  fepAction:
    args:
      - new-fep-sts-0
      - new-fep-sts-1
    type: reload
  sysExtraLogging: false
  targetClusterName: new-fep

```

### Note

Please do not use the FEPAction to perform a switchover or restart while executing backup. Failed to get the backup.

## 1.2.10.1 FEPAction Specific Operation Details

### Action type - reload

The reload action will manually reload the FEP database on the targeted FEPCluster.

“reload” action type expects users to specify the name of individual FEP pods that they want to run the database reload operation on. They specify that in the args section under the FEPAction CR spec as below :

```

spec:
  fepAction:
    args:

```

```
- nf-131851-sts-0
- nf-131851-sts-1
type: reload
targetClusterName: nf-131851
```

### Action type - restart

The restart action will manually restart the FEP database on the targeted FEPCluster.

“restart” action type expects users to specify the name of individual FEP pods that they want to run the database restart operation on. They specify that in the args section under the FEPACTION CR spec as below:

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    args:
      - nf-131851-sts-0
      - nf-131851-sts-1
    type: restart
  targetClusterName: nf-131851
```

### Action type - pod\_restart

The pod\_restart action will restart specified list of POD for given target cluster. User can specify key word ‘ALL’ under ‘args’ section to restart all pods in target cluster. Alternatively, user can give the list of pods to be started in target cluster. User should either give ALL or the list of the pods.

This action restarts the replica pods first. Once all replicas have been restarted, it switches over the mastership to one of the replica before restarting old master pod. If it is a single node cluster, master will be restarted in its current state. This action is automatically created to restart pods when image or machine specs are changed for fep or backup container depending on autoPodRestart flag in FEPCluster CR (see more details in FEPCluster CR section):

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    args:
      - nf-131851-sts-0
      - nf-131851-sts-1
    type: pod_restart
  targetClusterName: nf-131851
```

### Action type - list

The list action will return the status of the targeted FEPCluster.

“list” action type expects users to specify just the target cluster name to list the details of the same. Looks like below:

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    type: list
  targetClusterName: nf-131851
```

### Action type - switchover

The switchover action performs a manually switchover of the current leader/primary database from one pod to another pod of the targeted FEPCluster.

“switchover” action type expects users to specify the name of the current leader/primary pod that they want to switchover from. They specify that in the args section under the FEPACTION CR spec as below:

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    args:
      - nf-131851-sts-2
    type: switchover
  targetClusterName: nf-131851
```

Here, nf-131851-sts-2 is the current primary.

### Action type - failover

The failover action performs a manually failover of the current primary database from one pod to another pod of the targeted FEPCluster. The difference between switchover and failover is that, switchover expects the primary database is running at the time whereas failover can force switchover of primary role from a non-responding pod to another pod. Note that failover is a disruptive action and may cause data lost.

“failover” action type expects users to specify the names of the candidate pods that they want to failover to. They specify that in the args section under the FEPACTION CR spec as below:

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    args:
      - nf-131851-sts-1
      - nf-131851-sts-2
    type: failover
  targetClusterName: nf-131851
```

Here, nf-131851-sts-1 and nf-131851-2 are the candidate pods to failover to. In this example, the current primary pod would be nf-131851-sts-0.

### Action type - pgpool2\_restart

“pgpool2\_restart” action type expects users to specify the name of individual FEPPgpool2 resource that they want to restart operation on. They specify that in the targetPgpool2Name section under the FEPACTION CR spec as below:

```
spec:
  fepAction:
    type: pgpool2_restart
  targetPgpool2Name: nf-131851-pgpool2
```

## 1.2.11 FEPEXporter Custom Resource

Field	Default	Details
apiVersion	fep.fujitsu.io/v1	Mandatory as it is
kind	FEPEXporter	Mandatory as it is
metadata.name	fep-monitor	Name of FEPEXporter CR - must be unique in namespace
metadata.namespace	fep-ns	Namespace - OCP populates it as current
spec.prometheus		Optional Prometheus MTLS spec section
spec.prometheus.tls		
spec.prometheus.tls.certificateName		Optional This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of Prometheus ServiceMonitor. FEPEXporter will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt.
spec.prometheus.tls.caName		Optional This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt.
spec.fepExporter.		Exporter spec section
spec.fepExporter.authSecret		Optional

Field	Default	Details
		Base Authentication secret to provide username & encrypted password of user
spec.fepExporter.authSecret.secretName		Secret name
spec.fepExporter.authSecret.usernameKey		Key of username in specified secret
spec.fepExporter.authSecret.passwordKey		Key of password in specified secret
spec.fepExporter.tls		FEPEXporter MTLS specs
spec.fepExporter.tls.certificateName		Optional This points to Kubernetes TLS secret that contains the certificate of FepExporter. Prometheus will use this for certificate authentication. The certificate itself is stored in the key tls.crt.
spec.fepExporter.tls.caName		Optional This points to Kubernetes configmap that contains additional CA the client use to verify a server certificate. The CA is stored in the key ca.crt.
spec.fepExporter.disableDefaultQueries	false	Optional Not defined or set to false => Create default queries Defined and set to true => Do not create default queries.
spec.fepExporter.disableDefaultAlertRules	false	Optional Not defined or set to false => Create default alert rules Defined and set to true => Do not create default alert rules. If Default queries are disabled => Do not create default alert rule.
spec.fepExporter.exporterLogLevel	error	Set logging level: one of debug, info, warn, error
spec.fepExporter.fepClusterList		Array of FEPCluster to monitor
spec.fepExporter.image.image		quay.io/fujitsu/fujitsu-enterprise-postgres-13-exporter:ubi8-13-0.0  Optional If not specified; image name is picked up from operator environment variable
spec.fepExporter.image.pullPolicy	IfNotPresent	Always or IfNotPresent
spec.fepExporter.mcSpec.limits	cpu: 500m memory: 700Mi	Max CPU allocated to exporter container Max memory allocated to exporter container
spec.fepExporter.mcSpec.requests	cpu: 200m memory: 512Mi	CPU allocation at start for exporter container memory allocation at start for exporter container
spec.fepExporter.scrapeInterval	30s	Optional This parameter may be specified to change statistics scraping frequency. If specified, Prometheus will poll FEPEXporter at given interval.

Field	Default	Details
		CHANGE THIS PARAMETER ONLY IF REALLY REQUIRED
spec.fepExporter.scrapeTimeout	30s	Optional This parameter may be specified to change statistics scraping timeout. If specified, Prometheus will wait for FEPEXporter for maximum this given period to return statistics. CHANGE THIS PARAMETER ONLY IF REALLY REQUIRED
spec.fepExporter.sysExtraLogging	true	To turn on extra debugging messages for operator, set value to true <i>It can be turned on/off at any time</i>
spec.fepExporter.restartRequired	false	True: To restart FEPEXporter, when there is any change found in CR or FEPCluster False: Will not restart FEPEXporter
spec.fepExporter.userCustomQueries		Optional Section Example user's custom query to extract additional metrics.

```
usr_example:
  query: "SELECT EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM (now() - pg_last_xact_replay_timestamp())) as lag"
  master: true
  metrics:
    - lag:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Replication lag behind master in seconds"
```

## 1.2.12 FEPAutoscale Custom Resource

When FEPClusterCR is defined, FEPAutoscaleCR is defined.

The parameters are as follows:.

Configuration changes are made in FEPClusterCR.

Field	Default	Details
apiVersion	fep.fujitsu.io/v1	Fixed
kind	FEPAutoscale	Fixed
metadata.name	Same as FEPClusterCR	Fixed
metadata.namespace	Same as FEPClusterCR	Fixed
spec.scaleout.policy	Do not perform auto scale-out	[cpu_utilization]
spec.scaleout.threshold	40	Threshold (Average of all replicas) Must be an integer. The unit is %.
spec.limits.maxReplicas	2	Maximum number of replicas (0 to 15) (Value out of range) Do not perform auto scale-out

## Appendix A Default Metrics Queries

```
pg_capacity_connection:
  query: |
    select sys, idle, idleintx, idleintxl0min, idleintxlhour, idleintxlday, idleintxlweek,
    (curr.idle + curr.idleintx + curr.active) total, s.setting "max" from
    (
      select
        count(CASE WHEN a.state is null THEN 1 END) sys,
        count(CASE WHEN a.state='idle' THEN 1 END) idle,
        count(CASE WHEN a.state='idle in transaction' OR a.state='idle in transaction (aborted)' THEN
1 END) idleintx,
        count(CASE WHEN (a.state='idle in transaction' OR a.state='idle in transaction (aborted)') AND
age(now(), state_change) > interval '10 min' THEN 1 END) idleintxl0min,
        count(CASE WHEN (a.state='idle in transaction' OR a.state='idle in transaction (aborted)') AND
age(now(),state_change) > interval '1 hour' THEN 1 END) idleintxlhour,
        count(CASE WHEN (a.state='idle in transaction' OR a.state='idle in transaction (aborted)') AND
age(now(),state_change) > interval '1 day' THEN 1 END) idleintxlday,
        count(CASE WHEN (a.state='idle in transaction' OR a.state='idle in transaction (aborted)') AND
age(now(),state_change) > interval '1 week' THEN 1 END) idleintxlweek,
        count(CASE WHEN a.state='active' THEN 1 END) active
      from pg_stat_activity a
    ) curr, pg_settings s where name = 'max_connections'
  master: true
  metrics:
    - sys:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of system connections.'
    - idle:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of idle connections.'
    - idleintx:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of idle in transaction connections.'
    - idleintxl0min:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of idle in transaction connections running longer than 10 min.'
    - idleintxlhour:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of idle in transaction connections running longer than 1 hour.'
    - idleintxlday:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of idle in transaction connections running longer than 1 day.'
    - idleintxlweek:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of idle in transaction connections running longer than 1 week.'
    - total:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of total connections.'
    - max:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Max number of connections.'

pg_capacity_schema:
  query: |
    SELECT current_database() AS database_name, table_schema,
    COALESCE(SUM(pg_total_relation_size('' || table_schema || ''.''' || table_name || ''')), 0) AS size
    FROM information_schema.tables GROUP BY table_schema
  master: true
  metrics:
    - database_name:
      usage: 'LABEL'
```

```

        description: 'Database name.'
- table_schema:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Table schema name.'
- size:
    usage: 'GAUGE'
    description: 'Disk space of schema.'

pg_capacity_tblspace:
query: |
    SELECT pg_tablespace.spcname AS tablespace_name, pg_tablespace_size(pg_tablespace.spcname) AS
tablespace_size FROM pg_tablespace
master: true
metrics:
- tablespace_name:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Table space name.'
- tablespace_size:
    usage: 'GAUGE'
    description: 'Disk space of table space.'

pg_capacity_tblvacuum:
query: |
    SELECT current_database() datname, t.table_schema, count(t.table_name) table_count
    FROM information_schema.tables t
    INNER JOIN pg_catalog.pg_stat_user_tables tu on t.table_schema::text=tu.schemaname::text and
t.table_name::text=tu.relname::text
    and
    age(now(),greatest(COALESCE(last_vacuum, '1970-01-01Z'), COALESCE(last_autovacuum,
'1970-01-01Z'))) > interval '1 day'
    GROUP BY t.table_schema
master: true
metrics:
- datname:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Database name.'
- table_schema:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Table schema name.'
- table_count:
    usage: 'GAUGE'
    description: 'Number of tables without vacuum for more than a day.'

pg_capacity_longtx:
query: |
    with xact_count as (
    SELECT COALESCE(datname, '') datname, count(1)
    FROM pg_stat_activity
    where backend_type='client backend' and age(now(), COALESCE(xact_start, '1970-01-01Z')) >
interval '5 minutes'
    group by datname
    )
    select d.datname, coalesce(xc.count, 0) as count from pg_database d left join xact_count xc on
d.datname=xc.datname
master: true
metrics:
- datname:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Database name.'
- count:
    usage: 'GAUGE'
    description: 'Number of transactions running longer than 5 minutes.'

```

```

pg_capacity_tblbloat:
query: |
    SELECT DISTINCT
        current_database() as datname, schemaname, tablename as relname, /*reltuples::bigint,
relpages::bigint, otta,*/
        CASE WHEN relpages < otta THEN 0 ELSE bs*(sml.relpages-otta)::BIGINT END AS wastedbytes
    FROM (
        SELECT
            schemaname, tablename, cc.reltuples, cc.relpages, bs,
            CEIL((cc.reltuples*((datahdr+ma-
                (CASE WHEN datahdr%ma=0 THEN ma ELSE datahdr%ma END))+nullhdr2+4))/(bs-20::float)) AS otta,
            COALESCE(c2.relname, '?') AS iname, COALESCE(c2.reltuples,0) AS ituples, COALESCE(c2.relpages,
0) AS ipages,
            COALESCE(CEIL((c2.reltuples*(datahdr-12))/(bs-20::float)),0) AS iotta -- very rough
approximation, assumes all cols

        FROM (
            SELECT
                ma,bs,schemaname,tablename,
                (datawidth+(hdr+ma-(case when hdr%ma=0 THEN ma ELSE hdr%ma END))):numeric AS datahdr,
                (maxfracsum*(nullhdr+ma-(case when nullhdr%ma=0 THEN ma ELSE nullhdr%ma END))) AS nullhdr2
            FROM (
                SELECT
                    schemaname, tablename, hdr, ma, bs,
                    SUM((1-null_frac)*avg_width) AS datawidth,
                    MAX(null_frac) AS maxfracsum,
                    hdr+(
                        SELECT 1+count(*)/8
                        FROM pg_stats s2
                        WHERE null_frac<>0 AND s2.schemaname = s.schemaname AND s2.tablename = s.tablename
                    ) AS nullhdr
                FROM pg_stats s, (
                    SELECT
                        (SELECT current_setting('block_size')::numeric) AS bs,
                        CASE WHEN substring(v,12,3) IN ('8.0','8.1','8.2') THEN 27 ELSE 23 END AS hdr,
                        CASE WHEN v ~ 'mingw32' THEN 8 ELSE 4 END AS ma
                    FROM (SELECT version() AS v) AS foo
                ) AS constants
                GROUP BY 1,2,3,4,5
            ) AS foo
        ) AS rs
        JOIN pg_class cc ON cc.relname = rs.tablename
        JOIN pg_namespace nn ON cc.relnamespace = nn.oid AND nn.nspname = rs.schemaname AND nn.nspname
<> 'information_schema'
        LEFT JOIN pg_index i ON indrelid = cc.oid
        LEFT JOIN pg_class c2 ON c2.oid = i.indexrelid
    ) AS sml
    ORDER BY wastedbytes DESC
master: true
metrics:
- datname:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Database name.'
- schemaname:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Schema name.'
- relname:
    usage: 'LABEL'
    description: 'Name of this table.'
- wastedbytes:
    usage: 'GAUGE'
    description: 'Number of bytes wasted for table.'

```



pg\_performance\_locking\_detail:

```
query: |
    SELECT blocked_locks.pid AS blocked_pid,
           blocked_activity.username AS blocked_user,
           blocking_locks.pid AS blocking_pid,
           blocking_activity.username AS blocking_user,
           blocked_activity.query AS blocked_statement,
           1 locks
    FROM pg_catalog.pg_locks blocked_locks
    JOIN pg_catalog.pg_stat_activity blocked_activity ON blocked_activity.pid = blocked_locks.pid
    JOIN pg_catalog.pg_locks blocking_locks
    ON blocking_locks.locktype = blocked_locks.locktype
    AND blocking_locks.DATABASE IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.DATABASE
    AND blocking_locks.relation IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.relation
    AND blocking_locks.page IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.page
    AND blocking_locks.tuple IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.tuple
    AND blocking_locks.virtualxid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.virtualxid
    AND blocking_locks.transactionid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.transactionid
    AND blocking_locks.classid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.classid
    AND blocking_locks.objid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.objid
    AND blocking_locks.objsubid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.objsubid
    AND blocking_locks.pid != blocked_locks.pid
    JOIN pg_catalog.pg_stat_activity blocking_activity ON blocking_activity.pid = blocking_locks.pid
    WHERE NOT blocked_locks.GRANTED
```

master: true

metrics:

- blocked\_pid:
  - usage: 'LABEL'
  - description: 'Blocked process id.'
- blocked\_user:
  - usage: 'LABEL'
  - description: 'Blocked user.'
- blocking\_pid:
  - usage: 'LABEL'
  - description: 'Blocking process id.'
- blocking\_user:
  - usage: 'LABEL'
  - description: 'Blocking user.'
- blocked\_statement:
  - usage: 'LABEL'
  - description: 'Blocked statement.'
- locks:
  - usage: 'GAUGE'
  - description: 'Number of processes in blocked state.'

pg\_performance\_locking:

```
query: |
    WITH
    locks as (
        SELECT blocked_locks.DATABASE, count(blocked_locks.pid) locks
        FROM pg_catalog.pg_locks blocked_locks
        JOIN pg_catalog.pg_stat_activity blocked_activity ON blocked_activity.pid = blocked_locks.pid
        JOIN pg_catalog.pg_locks blocking_locks
        ON blocking_locks.locktype = blocked_locks.locktype
        AND blocking_locks.DATABASE IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.DATABASE
        AND blocking_locks.relation IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.relation
        AND blocking_locks.page IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.page
        AND blocking_locks.tuple IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.tuple
        AND blocking_locks.virtualxid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.virtualxid
        AND blocking_locks.transactionid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.transactionid
        AND blocking_locks.classid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.classid
        AND blocking_locks.objid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.objid
        AND blocking_locks.objsubid IS NOT DISTINCT FROM blocked_locks.objsubid
```

```

        AND blocking_locks.pid != blocked_locks.pid
        JOIN pg_catalog.pg_stat_activity blocking_activity ON blocking_activity.pid =
blocking_locks.pid
        WHERE NOT blocked_locks.GRANTED group by blocked_locks.DATABASE
    ),
    dbs as (
        select * from pg_catalog.pg_database
    )
    select dbs.datname, coalesce(locks.locks, 0) locks from dbs left join locks on dbs.oid=DATABASE
master: true
metrics:
  - datname:
      usage: 'LABEL'
      description: 'Database name'
  - locks:
      usage: 'GAUGE'
      description: 'Number of processes in blocked state.'

pg_replication:
  query: |
    SELECT CASE WHEN pg_last_wal_receive_lsn() = pg_last_wal_replay_lsn() THEN 0 ELSE GREATEST (0,
EXTRACT(EPOCH FROM (now() - pg_last_xact_replay_timestamp()))) END AS lag
  master: true
  metrics:
    - lag:
        usage: "GAUGE"
        description: "Replication lag behind master in seconds"

pg_postmaster:
  query: |

    SELECT pg_postmaster_start_time as start_time_seconds from pg_postmaster_start_time()
  master: true
  metrics:
    - start_time_seconds:
        usage: "GAUGE"
        description: "Time at which postmaster started"

pg_stat_user_tables:
  query: |
    SELECT
      current_database() datname,
      schemaname,
      relname,
      seq_scan,
      seq_tup_read,
      idx_scan,
      idx_tup_fetch,
      n_tup_ins,
      n_tup_upd,
      n_tup_del,
      n_tup_hot_upd,
      n_live_tup,
      n_dead_tup,
      n_mod_since_analyze,
      last_vacuum,
      last_autovacuum,
      last_analyze,
      last_autoanalyze,
      vacuum_count,
      autovacuum_count,
      analyze_count,
      autoanalyze_count

```

```

FROM
  pg_stat_user_tables
master: true
metrics:
  - datname:
      usage: "LABEL"
      description: "Name of current database"
  - schemaname:
      usage: "LABEL"
      description: "Name of the schema that this table is in"
  - relname:
      usage: "LABEL"
      description: "Name of this table"
  - seq_scan:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of sequential scans initiated on this table"
  - seq_tup_read:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of live rows fetched by sequential scans"
  - idx_scan:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of index scans initiated on this table"
  - idx_tup_fetch:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of live rows fetched by index scans"
  - n_tup_ins:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of rows inserted"
  - n_tup_upd:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of rows updated"
  - n_tup_del:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of rows deleted"
  - n_tup_hot_upd:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of rows HOT updated (i.e., with no separate index update required)"
  - n_live_tup:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Estimated number of live rows"
  - n_dead_tup:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Estimated number of dead rows"
  - n_mod_since_analyze:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Estimated number of rows changed since last analyze"
  - last_vacuum:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Last time at which this table was manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM FULL)"
  - last_autovacuum:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Last time at which this table was vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon"
  - last_analyze:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Last time at which this table was manually analyzed"
  - last_autoanalyze:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Last time at which this table was analyzed by the autovacuum daemon"
  - vacuum_count:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of times this table has been manually vacuumed (not counting VACUUM
FULL)"
  - autovacuum_count:

```

```

        usage: "COUNTER"
        description: "Number of times this table has been vacuumed by the autovacuum daemon"
    - analyze_count:
        usage: "COUNTER"
        description: "Number of times this table has been manually analyzed"
    - autoanalyze_count:
        usage: "COUNTER"
        description: "Number of times this table has been analyzed by the autovacuum daemon"

pg_statio_user_tables:
    query: |
        SELECT current_database() datname, schemaname, relname, heap_blks_read, heap_blks_hit,
        idx_blks_read, idx_blks_hit, toast_blks_read, toast_blks_hit, tidx_blks_read, tidx_blks_hit FROM
        pg_statio_user_tables
    metrics:
        - datname:
            usage: "LABEL"
            description: "Name of current database"
        - schemaname:
            usage: "LABEL"
            description: "Name of the schema that this table is in"
        - relname:
            usage: "LABEL"
            description: "Name of this table"
        - heap_blks_read:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of disk blocks read from this table"
        - heap_blks_hit:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of buffer hits in this table"
        - idx_blks_read:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of disk blocks read from all indexes on this table"
        - idx_blks_hit:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of buffer hits in all indexes on this table"
        - toast_blks_read:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of disk blocks read from this table's TOAST table (if any)"
        - toast_blks_hit:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of buffer hits in this table's TOAST table (if any)"
        - tidx_blks_read:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of disk blocks read from this table's TOAST table indexes (if any)"
        - tidx_blks_hit:
            usage: "COUNTER"
            description: "Number of buffer hits in this table's TOAST table indexes (if any)"

pg_database:
    query: |

        SELECT pg_database.datname, pg_database_size(pg_database.datname) as size_bytes FROM pg_database
    master: true
    cache_seconds: 30
    metrics:
        - datname:
            usage: "LABEL"
            description: "Name of the database"
        - size_bytes:
            usage: "GAUGE"
            description: "Disk space used by the database"

```

```

pg_stat_statements:
  query: |
    SELECT t2.rolname, t3.datname, queryid, calls, total_plan_time / 1000 as
total_plan_time_seconds, total_exec_time / 1000 as total_exec_time_seconds, min_plan_time / 1000 as
min_plan_time_seconds, min_exec_time / 1000 as min_exec_time_seconds, max_plan_time / 1000 as
max_plan_time_seconds, max_exec_time / 1000 as max_exec_time_seconds, mean_plan_time / 1000 as
mean_plan_time_seconds, mean_exec_time / 1000 as mean_exec_time_seconds, stddev_plan_time / 1000 as
stddev_plan_time_seconds, stddev_exec_time / 1000 as stddev_exec_time_seconds, rows, shared_blks_hit,
shared_blks_read, shared_blks_dirtied, shared_blks_written, local_blks_hit, local_blks_read,
local_blks_dirtied, local_blks_written, temp_blks_read, temp_blks_written, blk_read_time / 1000 as
blk_read_time_seconds, blk_write_time / 1000 as blk_write_time_seconds FROM pg_stat_statements t1
JOIN pg_roles t2 ON (t1.userid=t2.oid) JOIN pg_database t3 ON (t1.dbid=t3.oid) WHERE t2.rolname !=
'rdsadmin'
  master: true
  metrics:
    - rolname:
      usage: "LABEL"
      description: "Name of user"
    - datname:
      usage: "LABEL"
      description: "Name of database"
    - queryid:
      usage: "LABEL"
      description: "Query ID"
    - calls:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Number of times executed"
    - total_plan_time_seconds:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Total plan time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - total_exec_time_seconds:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Total exec time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - min_plan_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Minimum plan time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - min_exec_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Minimum exec time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - max_plan_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Maximum plan time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - max_exec_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Maximum exec time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - mean_plan_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Mean plan time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - mean_exec_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Mean exec time spent in the statement, in milliseconds"
    - stddev_plan_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Population standard deviation of plan time spent in the statement, in
milliseconds"
    - stddev_exec_time_seconds:
      usage: "GAUGE"
      description: "Population standard deviation of exec time spent in the statement, in
milliseconds"
    - rows:
      usage: "COUNTER"
      description: "Total number of rows retrieved or affected by the statement"
    - shared_blks_hit:

```

```

        usage: "COUNTER"
        description: "Total number of shared block cache hits by the statement"
- shared_blks_read:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of shared blocks read by the statement"
- shared_blks_dirtied:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of shared blocks dirtied by the statement"
- shared_blks_written:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of shared blocks written by the statement"
- local_blks_hit:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of local block cache hits by the statement"
- local_blks_read:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of local blocks read by the statement"
- local_blks_dirtied:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of local blocks dirtied by the statement"
- local_blks_written:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of local blocks written by the statement"
- temp_blks_read:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of temp blocks read by the statement"
- temp_blks_written:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total number of temp blocks written by the statement"
- blk_read_time_seconds:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total time the statement spent reading blocks, in milliseconds (if
track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)"
- blk_write_time_seconds:
    usage: "COUNTER"
    description: "Total time the statement spent writing blocks, in milliseconds (if
track_io_timing is enabled, otherwise zero)"

```

## Appendix B Default Alert Rules

```
apiVersion: monitoring.coreos.com/v1
kind: PrometheusRule
metadata:
  name: {{ ansible_operator_meta.name }}-{{ item.name }}-alertrules
  namespace: {{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}
  labels:
    app: prometheus-postgres-exporter-alertrules
    name: {{ ansible_operator_meta.name }}-{{ item.name }}-alertrules
spec:
  groups:
    - name: fep-container
      rules:
        - alert: ContainerDisappeared
          annotations:
            description: {{ 'Container {{$labels.container}}/{{$labels.pod}} from
            {{$labels.namespace}} has been disappeared' }}
            summary: Container Pod disappeared.
          expr: time() -
            container_last_seen{ container="fep-patroni",
            namespace="{{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}", pod=~"^{item.name}-sts-.*" } > 60
          labels:
            severity: warning
        - alert: ContainerHighCPUUsage
          annotations:
            description: {{ 'Container {{$labels.container}}/{{$labels.pod}} from
            {{$labels.namespace}} has been high on CPU usage(>80%) for 5 mins' }}
            summary: High Container CPU usage.
          expr:
            (sum(node_namespace_pod_container:container_cpu_usage_seconds_total:sum_rate{pod=~"{{ item.name }}-
            sts.*", namespace="{{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}", container="fep-patroni"}) by
            (pod,namespace,container)/sum(kube_pod_container_resource_limits_cpu_cores) by
            (pod,namespace,container))*100 > 80
          for: 5m
          labels:
            severity: warning
        - alert: ContainerHighRAMUsage
          annotations:
            description: {{ 'Container {{$labels.container}}/{{$labels.pod}} from
            {{$labels.namespace}} has been high on RAM usage(>80%) since 30 mins' }}
            summary: High container memory usage.
          expr: sum(container_memory_working_set_bytes{pod=~"{{ item.name }}-sts.*",
            namespace="{{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}", container="fep-patroni" } /
            container_spec_memory_limit_bytes * 100) by (pod, container, instance) > 80
          for: 30m
          labels:
            severity: warning
        - alert: PVCLowDiskSpace
          annotations:
            description: {{ 'Found low disk space on {{$labels.persistentvolumeclaim}} in
            {{$labels.namespace}} namespace.' }}
            summary: {{ 'Found low disk space on {{$labels.persistentvolumeclaim}} in
            {{$labels.namespace}} namespace.' }}
          expr:
            kubelet_volume_stats_available_bytes{namespace="{{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}",
            persistentvolumeclaim=~"fep.*{item.name}.*"} / (kubelet_volume_stats_capacity_bytes) * 100 < 10
          for: 5m
          labels:
            severity: warning
    - name: postgres
      rules:
```

```

- alert: PostgresqlDown
  annotations:
    description: "Postgresql one or more instances are down in FEPCluster {{ item.name }} in
  {{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }} namespace. Please check the FEP pods in this cluster"
    summary: "Postgresql FEPCluster {{ item.name }} in {{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}
  namespace is degraded"
    expr: count(pg_static{ namespace="{{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}",
  service="{{ ansible_operator_meta.name }}-service", server=~"{{item.name}}-sts.*" }) <
  {{item.instances | length}}
    labels:
      severity: error
- alert: PostgresqlTooManyConnections
  annotations:
    description: {{ 'PostgreSQL instance has too many connections on server
  {{ $labels.server }} in {{ $labels.namespace }} namespace.' }}
    summary: {{ 'Postgresql too many connections (FEPCluster server {{ $labels.server }})' }}
    expr: pg_capacity_connection_total{namespace="{{ ansible_operator_meta.namespace }}",
  service="{{ ansible_operator_meta.name }}-service", server=~"{{ item.name }}-sts.*"}/
  pg_settings_max_connections > 0.9
    labels:
      severity: warning

```